



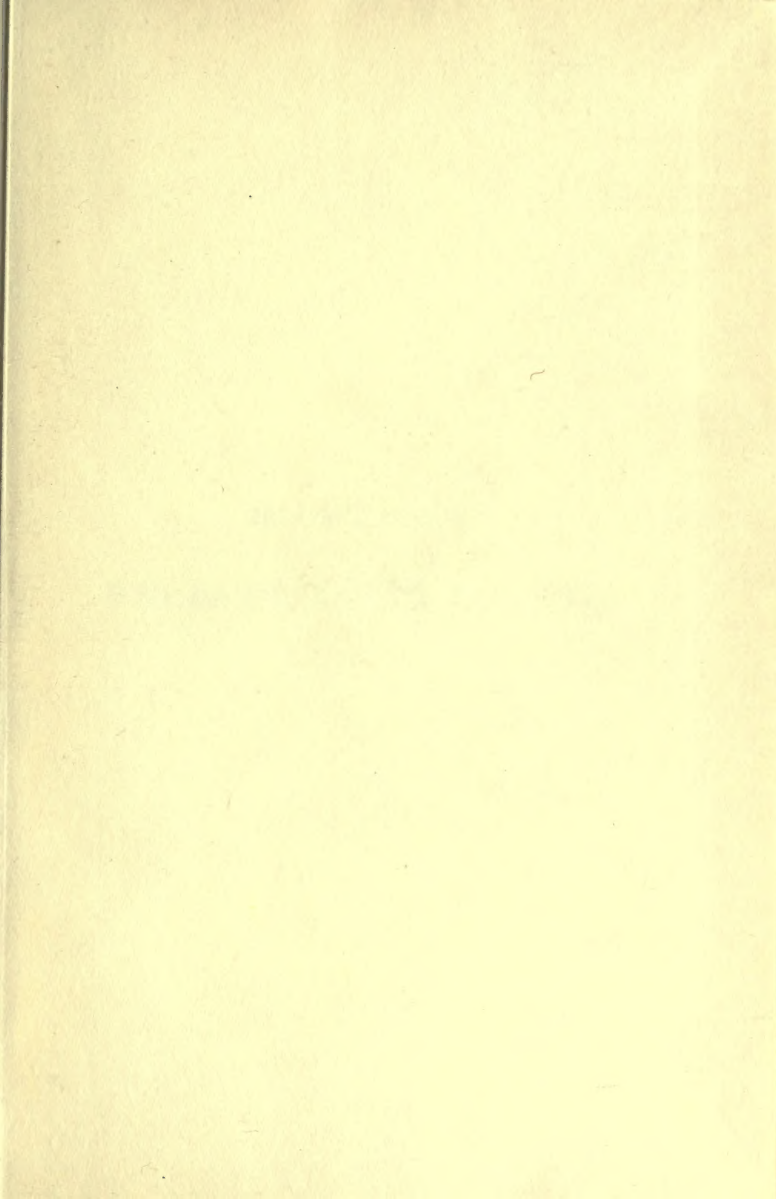


Presented to  
The Library  
of the  
University of Toronto  
by  
MESSRS. MACMILLAN & CO.

BOUND  
THE



UNIVERSITY OF  
TORONTO PRESS





Digitized by the Internet Archive  
in 2007 with funding from  
Microsoft Corporation



8899

I

22

MACMILLAN'S  
SHORTER LATIN COURSE



LaL.Gr  
C7713 ma

MACMILLAN'S

# SHORTER. LATIN COURSE

BEING AN ABRIDGMENT OF MACMILLAN'S  
LATIN COURSE—FIRST PART

BY

A. M. COOK, M.A.,

ASSISTANT MASTER IN ST. PAUL'S SCHOOL

35405  
19/9/94

London

MACMILLAN AND CO.

AND NEW YORK

1894



SHORTER LATIN COURSE



*First Edition printed by R. & R. CLARK, 1886*

*Reprinted 1887, 1888, 1890, 1891, 1892, 1894*





## P R E F A C E.

THIS book is an abridgment of the *Latin Course, First Part*. In that work an attempt was made to make the first steps of a beginner in Latin as easy as possible. The advance was made very gradual, the vocabulary was kept within the smallest possible limits, and care was taken that repeated changes should be rung on these few words by an abundance of exercises. In many schools, however, where the principle of this book, which a reviewer has termed aptly enough, "modified Prendergastianism," was approved, it was found impossible, owing to the limited time that could be given to Latin, to work through so large a number of exercises. To meet the requirements of these schools, and at the suggestion of several eminent teachers, the present Shorter Course has been prepared. It differs from the original edition (which will still remain on sale) in the following points: (1) It takes in the passive indicative of the four conjugations. (This, however, will be added to the original Course in another edition.) (2) The exercises have been reduced by about one half, the Latin into English exercises having been especially curtailed. (3) Though the same subjects are treated, the subject of the gender of nouns of the third declension has been dealt with in a more summary way. (4) All the words, whether used in the exercises or in the pieces of translation, are to be found in the dictionaries at the end of the book. The pieces of translation are left practically unaltered.

*September 1886.*

# CONTENTS.

SECT.	PAGE
1. First Declension : Singular . . . . .	1
2. The Accusative Case . . . . .	1
3. First Declension : Singular ( <i>continued</i> ) . . . . .	2
4.       "               Plural . . . . .	3
5. Second Declension : Nouns in <i>-us</i> . . . . .	4
6.       "               Neuter Nouns . . . . .	6
7.       "               Adjectives in <i>-us -a -um</i> : Singular . . . . .	7
8.       "               "               "               Plural . . . . .	8
9.       "               Nouns and Adjectives in <i>-er</i> . . . . .	9
10. Est—Sunt . . . . .	11
TRANSLATION I. A Letter of a Father to his Boy at School . . . . .	12
"       II. Romulus and Remus . . . . .	12
"       III. The Black Slave . . . . .	13
11. Third Declension : Case-Endings . . . . .	13
12. The Gender shown by Meaning . . . . .	15
TRANSLATION IV. A Fable . . . . .	17
13. The Stem . . . . .	17
14. Genitive Plural . . . . .	19
15.       "               ( <i>continued</i> ) . . . . .	20
TRANSLATION V. Coriolanus . . . . .	22
16. Endings of Neuter Nouns . . . . .	22
17.       "               "               ( <i>continued</i> ) . . . . .	24
TRANSLATION VI. Theseus and Ariadne . . . . .	25
18. Gender of Nouns by Termination : The Masculine Rule . . . . .	25
TRANSLATION VII. A Surprise . . . . .	27
19. The Feminine Rule . . . . .	28
TRANSLATION VIII. The Roman Army fights a Serpent . . . . .	30

# Contents.

vii

SECT.	PAGE
20. The Neuter Rule . . . . .	31
21. „ (continued) . . . . .	32
TRANSLATION IX. A Battle . . . . .	33
22. Exceptions to these Gender Rules . . . . .	33
23. Adjectives of the Third Declension . . . . .	35
24. „ „ „ (continued) . . . . .	36
25. „ „ „ (continued) . . . . .	38
TRANSLATION X. A Roman Account of Britain . . . . .	39
Recapitulatory Exercises, A-D . . . . .	40
26. Fourth Declension . . . . .	41
27. „ Neuter Nouns . . . . .	43
28. „ <i>Domus</i> . . . . .	44
29. Fifth Declension . . . . .	45
TRANSLATION XI. A Ghost . . . . .	46
30. Comparison of Adjectives : Comparative . . . . .	47
31. „ „ Superlative . . . . .	49
TRANSLATION XII. Arminius . . . . .	50
32. Comparison of Adjectives : Superlative (continued) . . . . .	51
33. Irregular Comparison . . . . .	52
TRANSLATION XIII. Ixion, Sisyphus, and Tantalus . . . . .	53
34. Cardinal Numerals . . . . .	54
35. Ordinal Numerals . . . . .	56
TRANSLATION XIV. Dates in Early English History . . . . .	57
36. The Verb : <i>Esse</i> . . . . .	58
37. „ „ (continued) . . . . .	59
38. „ „ (continued) . . . . .	60
TRANSLATIONS XV., XVI. Bannockburn . . . . .	62
39. Pronouns : <i>Ego, Tu, Se</i> . . . . .	63
40. „ <i>Hic, Ille</i> . . . . .	65
41. „ <i>Is, Idem</i> . . . . .	66
42. „ <i>Ipse, Iste,</i> . . . . .	68
43. „ <i>Totus, Alius</i> . . . . .	70
44. „ <i>Uter, Alter</i> . . . . .	71
45. „ <i>Qui</i> . . . . .	73
TRANSLATION XVII. Ulysses and Polyphemus—I. . . . .	74
Recapitulatory Exercises—E-I . . . . .	75
46. Verbs : Active, Indicative : First Conjugation (contd.) . . . . .	77
47. „ „ „ (contd.) . . . . .	78
48. „ „ „ (contd.) . . . . .	80

SECT.	PAGE
49. Verbs : Active, Indicative : First Conjugation .	81
TRANSLATION XVIII. Ulysses and Polyphemus—II. .	81
50. Second Conjugation . . . . .	82
51. „ (continued) . . . . .	83
TRANSLATION XIX. Ulysses and Polyphemus—III. .	84
52. Third Conjugation . . . . .	85
53. „ (continued) . . . . .	87
TRANSLATION XX. Ulysses and Polyphemus—IV. .	88
54. Fourth Conjugation . . . . .	89
55. „ (continued) . . . . .	90
TRANSLATION XXI. Ulysses and Polyphemus—V. .	91
„ XXII. Gaius Mucius Scaevola . . . . .	92
Recapitulatory Exercises—J-M . . . . .	92
56. Passive Indicative : First Conjugation . . . . .	94
57. „ „ . . . . .	95
TRANSLATION XXIII. A Cork Leg . . . . .	96
58. Second Conjugation . . . . .	97
59. „ (continued) . . . . .	98
TRANSLATIONS XXIV., XXV. David and Goliath . . . . .	99
60. Third Conjugation . . . . .	100
61. „ (continued) . . . . .	101
TRANSLATION XXVI. Nasica and Ennius . . . . .	102
„ XXVII. Literal Obedience . . . . .	103
62. Fourth Conjugation . . . . .	103
63. „ (continued) . . . . .	104
TRANSLATION XXVIII. Bacchus and the Pirates . . . . .	105
Recapitulatory Exercises—N-Q . . . . .	106
Conjugation of the Verbs . . . . .	109
Vocabularies to the First Four Pieces of Translation . . . . .	126
Latin-English Dictionary . . . . .	128
English-Latin Dictionary . . . . .	146



# SHORTER LATIN COURSE.

## SECTION 1.

### FIRST DECLENSION : SINGULAR.

Learn :—

Nominative case,	Mensā	<i>a table.</i>
Accusative case,	Mensam	<i>a table.</i>
Genitive case,	Mensae	<i>of a table (or) a table's.</i>
Dative case,	Mensae	<i>to (or) for a table.</i>
Ablative case,	Mensā	<i>by, with, (or) from a table.</i>

Write down in the same way :—

vīta,	<i>life.</i>	fēneſtra,	<i>a window.</i>
cōlōnia,		<i>the colony.</i>	

## SECTION 2.

### THE ACCUSATIVE CASE.

We say in English “I strike *him*,” not “I strike *he*,” and “He strikes *me*,” not “He strikes *I*,” for in these sentences the persons who strike are put in the nominative, and the persons whom they strike in the accusative. But very few words in English, as it is spoken and written nowadays,<sup>1</sup> have an accusative case different from the nominative. We say, for instance, “The stone struck me” and “I struck the stone,” and the word

<sup>1</sup> English used to be more like Latin in this respect; for instance, “tunge” (now “tongue”) used to have an accusative “tungan.”

"stone" is not altered as "me" is to "I." In Latin, on the other hand, most words have an accusative case different from the nominative, and great care must be taken to use the accusative when the noun in English follows the verb. In such a sentence, therefore, as "He strikes the table," *the table* would be "mensam."

*Obs.* In putting the Latin sentences into English an *a* or a *the* will have often to be added, whichever of the two seems the more suitable.

For the words see the Dictionaries at the end.

[1.] 1. Puella Juliam laudat. 2. Julia puellam laudat. 3. Cornēlia mensam ornat. 4. Cornelia Juliam amat. 5. Puella Corneliam amat. 6. Julia rōsam laudat. 7. Puella Juliam amat. 8. Cornelia rosam laudat. 9. Puella mensam laudat. 10. Julia Corneliam ornat. 11. Cornelia puellam laudat. 12. Julia Corneliam amat.

[2.] 1. Cornelia praises Julia. 2. Julia praises Cornelia. 3. Cornelia loves the girl. 4. The girl praises the rose. 5. Julia praises the table. 6. Julia loves the girl. 7. Cornelia praises the table. 8. Julia decorates the table.

### SECTION 3.

FIRST DECLENSION: SINGULAR—(*Continued*).

[Other cases than the accusative.]

[3.] 1. Puella mensam regīnæ ornat. 2. Julia Corneliæ mensam dat. 3. Puella reginam semper laudat. 4. Puella Juliæ rosam sæpe dat. 5. Cornelia puellæ epistulam dat. 6. Cornelia mensam Juliæ ornat. 7. Regina epistulam puellæ laudat. 8. Regina puellæ epistulam dat. 9. Puella Corneliæ epistulam dat. 10. Cornelia! puella mensam semper ornat. 11. Puella

reginae Italiae mensam dat. 12. Julia semper, Cornelia saepe, puellam laudat.

[4.] 1. The Queen of Italy praises the girl. 2. Julia always praises the girl's letter. 3. The girl gives a letter to the queen. 4. Cornelia always praises the girl. 5. The girl decorates the table with a rose. 6. The queen often gives a rose to the girl. 7. Julia! the queen gives a letter to the girl. 8. The girl often decorates the table of the queen.

### SECTION 4.

#### FIRST DECLENSION : PLURAL.

Learn :—

Nom.	Mensae	<i>tables.</i>
Acc.	Mensas	<i>tables.</i>
Gen.	Mensarum	<i>of tables.</i>
Dat.	Mensis	<i>to (or) for tables.</i>
Abl.	Mensis	<i>by, with, (or) from tables.</i>

[5.] 1. Puellae mensam reginae ornant. 2. Puella mensas reginae ornat. 3. Reginae puellam semper laudant. 4. Puella mensam reginae rosis ornat. 5. Julia epistulas reginarum saepe habet. 6. Regina epistulam puellarum laudat. 7. Puellae reginam Italiae amant. 8. Puellae rosis semper mensam reginae ornant. 9. Regina semper rosas puellae habet. 10. Puellae epistulas reginarum habent. 11. Regina puellae mensam dat. 12. Puellae reginae saepe rosas dant. 13. Regina hodie puellas saepe laudat. 14. Puella reginae semper epistulas dat. 15. Regina puellam, puella reginam, amat. 16. Regina puellis mensas dat. 17. Puellae Juliae epistulam dant. 18. Regina Juliae rosam, Corneliae mensam, dat.

[6.] 1. The girls have roses to-day. 2. Julia loves the girls. 3. The girl has a table. 4. Cornelia praises the girls to-day. 5. The girls decorate the tables to-day.

6. Julia always has roses. 7. The girl often decorates the tables. 8. Julia praises the girl to-day. 9. The girls often decorate the table. 10. Cornelia always praises the roses.

[7.] 1. The queen often praises the girl's letters. 2. The girls praise the roses of Italy. 3. Julia has the girl's letter to-day. 4. The girls decorate the queen's table with roses. 5. Cornelia always praises the letters of the girls. 6. The Queen of Italy has the girl's letter. 7. Julia praises the queen's letter to-day. 8. Julia gives letters to the girls. 9. The girls give a letter to Julia. 10. The Queen of Italy gives roses to the girls. 11. Julia gives roses to the girl. 12. The girl decorates Julia's table with the roses.

## SECTION 5.

### SECOND DECLENSION : NOUNS IN -US.

The greater number of masculine nouns of the second declension end in the nominative singular in *-us*, and are declined like :—

#### *Singular.*

Nom.	Dōmīnūs	<i>a master.</i>
Acc.	Dominum	<i>a master.</i>
Gen.	Domini	<i>of a master (or) a master's.</i>
Dat.	Domino	<i>to (or) for a master.</i>
Abl.	Domino	<i>by, with, (or) from a master.</i>

#### *Plural.*

Nom.	Domini	<i>masters.</i>
Acc.	Dominōs	<i>masters.</i>
Gen.	Dominōrum	<i>of masters.</i>
Dat.	Dominis	<i>to (or) for masters.</i>
Abl.	Dominis	<i>by, with, (or) from masters.</i>

The Latin for "O master!" or "Master!" is Domine.



*Domine* is called the Vocative Case. In all other nouns but those in *-us* of this declension the Vocative is the same as the Nominative Case.

*Obs.* In putting the Latin sentences into English a *his, her, or their* will have sometimes to be added. It follows that, in turning the English sentences into Latin, these words (for the present put in *italics*) should be passed over.

[8.] 1. Dominus servum laudat. 2. Servi dominum amant. 3. Domini amicos laudant. 4. Marcus servos videt. 5. Dominus reginam saepe videt. 6. Domini servos saepe laudant. 7. Marcus Juliam amat. 8. Amici Marcum vident. 9. Domine! regina servos laudat. 10. Marcus hodie amicum laudat. 11. Dominus servis epistolam dat. 12. Regina epistolam servi laudat. 13. Servi mensam domini ornant. 14. Julia servo rosam dat. 15. Servi dominis epistulas dant. 16. Servi! dominus epistolam habet. 17. Puella amicis rosas dat. 18. Regina Marco mensam dat. 19. Amici epistolam domini habent. 20. Regina Corneliae epistolam puellae dat.

[9.] 1. The slaves praise *their*<sup>1</sup> master. 2. The masters praise *their* slaves. 3. The slave has a friend. 4. Marcus praises *his* slave to-day. 5. Julia praises the slaves. 6. The slave praises the girls. 7. The girls decorate the queen's table with roses. 8. The slaves often praise *their* master. 9. Marcus praises the Queen of Italy. 10. The slaves see *their* master.

[10.] 1. The queen gives letters to *her* slaves. 2. Julia has *her* friend's letter. 3. The queens praise Marcus's letter. 4. The slaves have the letters of *their* masters. 5. Marcus often praises *his* slaves. 6. The

<sup>1</sup> Words in *italics* are left out in translation into Latin.

slave gives a rose to *his* master. 7. The slaves give *their* master a letter to-day. 8. The master praises the letters of *his* slaves. 9. The queen sees the girl's letter. 10. The slaves often see *their* master.

## SECTION 6.

### SECOND DECLENSION : NEUTER NOUNS.

The neuter nouns of the second declension end in *-um* ; and, like all neuter nouns, they have the nominative and accusative cases, both in the singular and plural, alike :—

	<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>
Nom.	Bellum <i>war.</i>	Nom.	Bellā <i>wars.</i>
Acc.	Bellum <i>war.</i>	Acc.	Bellā <i>wars.</i>
Gen.	Belli <i>of war.</i>	Gen.	Bellōrum <i>of wars.</i>
Dat.	Bello <i>to war.</i>	Dat.	Bellis <i>to wars.</i>
Abl.	Bello <i>by war.</i>	Abl.	Bellis <i>by wars.</i>

[11.] 1. Praemium domini servos delectat. 2. Servi arma dominorum habent. 3. Dominus servo praemium dat. 4. Bellum Germanos delectat. 5. Julia et Cornelia rosas semper habent. 6. Marcus diligentiam servorum saepe laudat. 7. Bellum dominum et servum delectat. 8. Germani diligentiam amant et laudant. 9. Domini servis praemium dant. 10. Servi mensam domini hodie ornant. 11. Regina diligentiam Juliae et Corneliae laudat. 12. Puella arma Marci videt et laudat.

[12.] 1. War pleases the slaves. 2. The reward of the queen pleases the girls. 3. The Germans love arms. 4. The queen praises the diligence of the slave. 5. Marcus loves and praises war. 6. The arms of Marcus please *his* friend. 7. The queen gives rewards to the girl. 8. The slaves have *their* master's arms.

9. The letters of *their* slaves please the masters. 10. The lord gives rewards to *his* slaves to-day.

## SECTION 7.

SECOND DECLENSION—(*Continued*): ADJECTIVES IN -US  
-A -UM SINGULAR.

These adjectives are thus declined in the singular :—

	<i>Masculine.</i> ( <i>like Dominus.</i> )	<i>Feminine.</i> ( <i>like Mensa.</i> )	<i>Neuter.</i> ( <i>like Bellum.</i> )
Nom.	Bōnus	bonā	bonum.
Acc.	Bonum	bonam	bonum.
Gen.	Boni	bonae	boni.
Dat.	Bono	bonae	bono.
Abl.	Bono	bonā	bono.

Adjectives must be put in the same gender and the same case of the singular or plural as the nouns with which they go.

	<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
N.	Dominus bonus	mensā longā	bellum longum.
Ac.	Dominum bonum	mensam longam	bellum longum.
G.	Domini boni	mensae longae	belli longi.
D.	Domino bono	mensae longae	bello longo.
Ab.	Domino bono	mensā longā	bello longo.

[13.] 1. Amicus meus amicum tuum hodie laudat. 2. Marcus servum tuum saepe videt. 3. Dominus diligentiam fidi servi semper laudat. 4. Regina Marco, amico tuo, servum dat. 5. Regina diligentiam bonae puellae laudat. 6. Servus domino epistulam meam dat. 7. Regina puellae fidae praemium dat. 8. Marcus longam amici epistulam habet. 9. Amici praemium meum vident. 10. Longa epistula reginam delectat. 11.

Marcus, amicus meus, puellam amat. 12. Regina servo meo praemium diligentiae dat.

[14.] 1. Marcus praises the diligence of your slave to-day. 2. The master gives a reward to *his* good slave. 3. The good master praises the diligence of *his* slaves. 4. The queen gives a rose to my friend. 5. The master often praises *his* faithful slave. 6. The slaves see *their* master's long letter. 7. Marcus and Julia see my letter. 8. The queen praises the good girl. 9. The slaves decorate the queen's table with roses. 10. A long war delights the Germans.

[15.] 1. The slaves are decorating *their* master's table with roses. 2. The girl has my rose. 3. The girls have the arms. 4. My friend praises my diligence. 5. Marcus gives the letter to *his* faithful friend. 6. The girl often sees the faithful slave. 7. Marcus praises my master. 8. Julia loves my friend Marcus. 9. The queen praises the diligence of your friend. 10. Master! your slaves have the letter.

## SECTION 8.

### SECOND DECLENSION—(Continued): ADJECTIVES IN -US, PLURAL

These adjectives are declined in the plural so:—

	<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
Nom.	Boni	bonae	bona.
Acc.	Bonos	bonas	bona.
Gen.	Bonōrum	bonārum	bonōrum
Dat.	Bonis	bonis	bonis.
Abl.	Bonis	bonis	bonis.

[16.] 1. Dominus multos et bonos servos habet. 2. Boni servi multos amicos semper habent. 3. Regina



diligentiam amicorum meorum laudat. 4. Dominus fidis servis praemia dat. 5. Bonae puellae arma tua hodie habent. 6. Germani multa arma habent. 7. Puellae mensas tuas, regina, ornant! 8. Dominus diligentiam bonorum servorum laudat. 9. Puellae mensam longam multis rosis ornant. 10. Multi domini diligentiam servorum laudant. 11. Longae epistulae puellam delectant. 12. Amici mei puellis multa praemia dant. 13. Dominus epistulas servorum fidorum habet. 14. Regina epistulam bonarum puellarum laudat. 15. Reginae bonae fidis puellis multas rosas dant.

[17.] 1. Marcus often sees my friends. 2. The master gives rewards to *his* good slaves. 3. Slaves always love good masters. 4. The girls give your roses to the queen. 5. Julia praises the diligence of the good girls. 6. Julia! the girl has your and my letters. 7. The good girls adorn Julia with many roses. 8. The girl gives many letters to the queen.

[18.] 1. The queen gives many rewards to the girl. 2. The girl loves the good queens. 3. Your friend gives many roses to the girl. 4. The good queen praises the diligence of my friends. 5. *His* friend gives your arms to Marcus. 6. The good queen always loves good girls. 7. The Germans praise long wars. 8. The girl gives my letters to Julia. 9. My slave gives a long letter to Marcus. 10. Marcus to-day has many rewards.

## SECTION 9.

SECOND DECLENSION—(*Continued*). Nouns and Adjectives in *-er*.

To the second declension belong also many nouns and adjectives ending in *-er*. Most of these drop the *e* in the other cases:—

	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Nom.	Magister	magistri.
Acc.	Magistrum	magistros.
Gen.	Magistri	magistrorum.
Dat.	Magistro	magistris.
Abl.	Magistro	magistris.

A few, however, keep the *e* throughout :—

	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Nom.	Puer	pueri.
Acc.	Puërum	pueros.
Gen.	Pueri	puerorum.
Dat.	Puero	pueris.
Abl.	Puero	pueris.

*Vir* is declined like *puer*.

[19.] 1. Magister pueris bonis libros dat. 2. Dominus miser epistulam servorum videt. 3. Regina puellam pulchram amat. 4. Puella mensam rosis pulchris ornat. 5. Regina libros puellarum pulchrarum laudat. 6. Puellae bonae pueris miseris rosas dant. 7. Puella reginae miserae rosas pulchras dat. 8. Multi pueri magistris epistulas longas dant. 9. Regina puellae miserae libros bonos dat. 10. Boni viri reginam miseram amant. 11. Puer puellae rosam pulchram saepe dat. 12. Libri pueros miseros hodie delectant.

[20.] 1. The boys see the books of *their* masters. 2. The master praises the diligence of the boys. 3. The good man gives a table to *his* slave. 4. The good lord praises the arms of the faithful slave. 5. The boy gives my books to *his* master. 6. The master gives good books to *his* boys. 7. Your friend sees the queen's unhappy slaves. 8. The good slave sees *his* master's letters.

[21.] 1. The good man always praises the unhappy

queen. 2. The unhappy man loves the beautiful girl. 3. The good girl often gives books to the unhappy queen. 4. The queen praises the girl's beautiful books. 5. The slaves praise the beautiful table of *their* masters. 6. The unhappy girl loves the good queen. 7. The queen often gives beautiful roses to the unhappy girl. 8. The good girls love the unhappy queen. 9. The masters give many letters to *their* slaves. 10. The queen always praises the good girl's diligence.

## SECTION 10.

## EST—SUNT.

Est, *is* : sunt, *are*.

The Latin for "Julia is queen" is *Julia est regina* (not *reginam*). The rule that the accusative is to be put after the verb does not apply to the verb "to be."

It is not right to say in English, "It is *me*," and "It is *him*," but "It is *I*," and "it is *he*." So in Latin, *est Julia* (not *Juliam*) will stand for "It is Julia."

Be careful, too, to notice that the adjective has to agree with its noun none the less because *est* or *sunt* comes between them. So the Latin for "the rose is beautiful" is *rosa est pulchra*.

[22.] 1. Puer est miser. 2. Epistula est longa. 3. Puellae sunt pulchrae. 4. Arma pulchra sunt. 5. Vir bonus non est miser. 6. Libri amico meo grati sunt. 7. Mensa magistri plena librorum est. 8. Magister Juliam laudat, Corneliam culpat. 9. Horti pulchri pueris et puellis grati sunt. 10. Epistula reginae bonis puellis grata est. 11. Hortus reginae semper plenus rosarum est. 12. Magister pigros pueros culpat, im-pigros laudat. 13. Magister pueris praemium non dat; non sunt boni. 14. Longa Marci epistula puellae

miseræ grata est. 15. Pueri sunt miseri: magister diligentiam non laudat. 16. Magister pueros culpât; semper sunt pigri.

[23.] 1. The letter is welcome. 2. The garden is beautiful. 3. The slaves are faithful. 4. Italy is beautiful. 5. The table is full. 6. The roses are beautiful. 7. The slaves are active. 8. The boy is active. 9. *He* is a good man. 10. The slaves of Marcus are faithful.

[24.] 1. The master is a good man. 2. Julia is queen of Italy. 3. The queen blames the lazy girls. 4. The lord's garden is full of roses. 5. A good man praises diligence. 6. Books are often the rewards of diligence. 7. Balbus is often a lazy boy. 8. The lord always blames the lazy slave. 9. The lord blames *his* slaves; they are not faithful. 10. Marcus is my friend, not yours. 11. The boy praises my friends and yours. 12. Your lord is a friend of the queen's. 13. Girls are not always beautiful. 14. Books are not always welcome to boys.

### I. A Letter of a Father to his Boy at School.

(*Words on p. 126.*)

Epistula magistri tui, Balbe, grata et jucunda mihi fuit. Nam diligentiam tuam laudat, et scribit: "Filius tuus bonus puer et industrius est." Mater tibi pulchrum librum, præmium diligentiae tuae, mittit. Soror tua hodie sex annos habet. Cotidie me rogat: "Quando, pater, revertet frater?" Vale!

### II. Romulus and Remus.

(*Words on p. 126.*)

Dum Romulus muros Romae multa diligentia aedificat, Remus, frater, puer piger et improbus, parvos adhuc

muros saepe transsilit. Verbis contumeliosis Romulum compellat. "Carissime frater, quam magnifici sunt muri tui! inimicos tuos egregie arcent!" Romulus, autem, plenus irae, Remum occidit. Tum feliciter muros conficit.

### III. The Black Slave.

(Words on p. 127.)

Agrippa nigrum servum habebat. Pueri, autem, miserum servum in plateis rident. "En," clamant, "quam niger est! Serve, nemo te lavat?" Dominus, tamen, vir bonus et validus, improbos pueros audit. Plenus irae pueros capillo arripit. Frustra clamant; frustra lacrimas fundunt. Cunctos sine mora in atramentum demergit.

## SECTION 11.

### THIRD DECLENSION.

The case-endings for masculine and feminine nouns of this declension are:—

	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Nom.	—	-es.
Acc.	-em	-es.
Gen.	-is	-um.
Dat.	-i	-ibus.
Abl.	-e	-ibus.

Some nouns, *soror*, *clamor*, *mulier*, for instance, are declined by adding these endings to the nominative singular. *Soror* therefore is declined:—

	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Nom.	Soror	sorores.
Acc.	Sorōrem	sorores.
Gen.	Sororis	sororum.
Dat.	Sorori	sororibus.
Abl.	Sorore	sororibus.



[25.] 1. Pueri puellas clamōre terrent. 2. Puer puellam clamoribus terret. 3. Puer bonus a sorore laudatur. 4. Mulier reginae multas epistulas dat. 5. Puer muliērem clamoribus terret. 6. Servi fidi hodie a dominis laudantur. 7. Vir bonus mulieribus libros dat. 8. Amicus meus sororem Juliae saepe videt. 9. Magister puero librum, praemium diligentiae, dat. 10. Balbus a Julia, Marcus a Cornelia, amatur. 11. Pueri a sorore semper laudantur. 12. Pueros pigros magister semper culpat. 13. Vir bonus mulierem nunquam terret. 14. Puer sorori librum, soror puero arma, dat. 15. Pueri sunt pigri ; nunquam praemia habent.

[26.] 1. The boys love *their* sisters. 2. The boy blames *his* sister to-day. 3. *His* sister often blames the boy. 4. Marcus has the books of the slaves. 5. The shouting of the boys frightens the girls. 6. The shouts of the girls frighten the queen. 7. The queen never praises the woman's letter. 8. Marcus gives a book to the woman. 9. Julia has the women's roses. 10. The boy gives a rose to *his* sisters.

[27.] 1. Julia's sisters give a book to the boy. 2. Julia praises *her* sister's diligence. 3. Wars frighten women. 4. Cornelia never gives a reward to *her* sister. 5. The sailors' shouting frightens the queen. 6. The boys' sisters have the roses. 7. The queen praises the diligence of *her* sisters. 8. The boy gives the books to *his* sister. 9. The lord frightens *his* lazy slaves. 10. *His* sister praises the unhappy boy. 11. The master always blames the shouting. 12. The boy sees *his* sister in the garden. 13. The shouts of the boys frighten the woman. 14. The women praise the roses of your garden. 15. Balbus loves the sister of the beautiful Julia.

## SECTION 12.

THIRD DECLENSION—(*Continued*).

The Gender shown by meaning.

The meaning of some words shows their gender : mercātor, a merchant, is masculine ; mulier, a woman, is feminine. “A good merchant,” and “a good woman,” will therefore be declined thus :—

*Singular.**Plural.*

Nom. Bonus mercator.	Nom. boni mercatores.
Acc. Bonum mercatōrem.	Acc. bonos mercatores.
Gen. Boni mercatoris.	Gen. bonorum mercatorum.
Dat. Bono mercatori.	Dat. bonis mercatoribus.
Abl. Bono mercatore.	Abl. bonis mercatoribus.

*Singular.**Plural.*

Nom. Bona mulier.	Nom. bonae mulieres.
Acc. Bonam muliĕrem.	Acc. bonas mulieres.
Gen. Bonae mulieris.	Gen. bonarum mulierum.
Dat. Bonae mulieri.	Dat. bonis mulieribus.
Abl. Bona muliere.	Abl. bonis mulieribus.

“By” must be translated by the preposition *a* (*ab* always before a vowel, and often before consonants), followed by the ablative before a person : otherwise the ablative by itself is enough. So :—

Regina a bono mercatore laudatur.

*The queen is praised by the good merchant.*

Regina clamoribus puerorum terretur.

*The queen is frightened by the shouts of the boys.*

- [28.] 1. Alexander sorori tuae rosam nunquam dat.  
2. Multi oratores reginam semper laudant. 3. Puer

libros clarorum oratorum hodie laudat. 4. Mercator Germanus reginae vinum dat. 5. Regina a multis oratoribus laudatur. 6. Marcus sororem meam amat et saepe laudat. 7. Magister diligentiam sororum meorum laudat. 8. Regina bonis mulieribus pecuniam cotidie dat. 9. Balbus diligentiam majorum meorum saepe laudat. 10. Marcus, vir bonus, miseris servis pecuniam dat. 11. Clamores puerorum miseras mulieres terrent. 12. Bella Alexandri clara sunt. 13. Servus domino vinum cotidie dat. 14. Servi mei Balbum et Marcum cotidie vident. 15. Mercatoribus bella non semper grata sunt.

[29.] 1. Alexander has many sisters. 2. The queen is praised by my sisters. 3. The lord gives money to the active merchant. 4. The poet praises the queen's beautiful sisters. 5. The poet gives *his* book to the celebrated orator. 6. The celebrated orator praises *his* ancestors. 7. Your ancestors are praised by the orator. 8. The good merchants give rewards to the sailors. 9. The orator praises the gardens of Italy. 10. The boy praises the long books of the orators.

[30.] 1. The queen praises the faithful women. 2. The faithful women are praised by the queen. 3. The lord praises the merchant's wine. 4. The queen often praises the diligence of the German merchants. 5. The boy loves *his* sister, and is praised by *his* sister. 6. The merchant's gardens are full of beautiful roses to-day. 7. The girl praises the diligence of the active women. 8. The boy often has your sister's books. 9. The queen praises the diligence of the merchants every day. 10. The slaves give the letters to the merchant every day. 11. The good merchant gives money to the orators. 12. The queen gives wine to the poet, money to the orator.

## IV. A Fable.

(Words on p. 127).

Societatem jungunt leo, equus, capra, ovis. Multam praedam capiunt, et in unum locum comportant. Tum in quattuor partes praedam dividunt. Leo, autem, "Prima pars," inquit, "mea est; nam leo rex animalium est. Et mea est pars secunda, propter magnos meos labores. Tertiam partem vindico, quoniam major mihi quam vobis, animalibus imbecillis et parvis, fames est. Quartam, denique, partem si quis sibi arrogat, mihi inimicus erit."

## SECTION 13.

## THIRD DECLENSION—(Continued): THE STEM.

The nouns of the third declension which have been given so far have been declined by adding the case-endings to the nominative singular. But in order to decline the greater number of nouns of this declension it is necessary to know another case as well. *Rex*, a king, for instance, is thus declined:—

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
Nom.	Rex.	Nom.	reges.
Acc.	Rēgem.	Acc.	reges.
Gen.	Regis.	Gen.	regum.
Dat.	Regi.	Dat.	regibus.
Abl.	Rege.	Abl.	regibus.

It is not to *rex*, but to *reg-*, that the case-endings are added.

- [31.] 1. Regina diligentiam militum semper laudat.  
 2. Soror parvo fratri bonum librum dat. 3. Fratres praemiis regis et reginae contenti sunt. 4. Rex militibus hodie non est contentus. 5. Regina fratrem et sororem



in horto videt. 6. Reges mercatoribus magnam pecuniam saepe dant. 7. Rex Germanus multos fratres et multas sorores habet. 8. Horti regum magni et pleni hodie rosarum sunt. 9. Regina militibus magnam pecuniam saepe dat. 10. Magister saepe fratrem culpatur, sororem semper laudat. 11. Milites praemiis reginae nunquam contenti sunt. 12. Rex nautis et militibus multa saepe praemia dat. 13. Magister me culpatur, te laudat. 14. Clamores militum me saepe terrent. 15. Reges fidis militibus magna praemia dant. 16. Marcus fidus regum amicus semper est. 17. Fratres tui miseri sunt: nunquam a magistro laudantur. 18. Regina fratribus meis, Marco et Alexandro, multos libros dat. 19. Te, amice, magistri nunquam laudant, me semper! 20. Frater meus clarus est: semper a militibus laudatur.

[32.] 1. Wars do not frighten the soldier. 2. The girl is praised by the soldier. 3. The soldiers frighten the girl by *their* shouts. 4. Julia is never praised by my brother. 5. The slaves give *their* lord's letters to the king. 6. The orators *are* always praising kings and queens. 7. The soldiers give a rose to the women. 8. The shouts of the common people frighten the king. 9. Your sisters see my brother every day. 10. The good king praises the beautiful queen.

[33.] 1. War is welcome to the soldiers. 2. *Their* sisters are always loved by *their* brothers. 3. My brothers are always active. 4. The merchants give good wine to the kings. 5. The king gives a large sum of money to the orators. 6. The brothers frighten *their* sisters by *their* shouts. 7. O queen, the poets always praise you! 8. My sisters love me, your sisters love you. 9. The brother gives many roses to *his* sister. 10. The king, a good man, gives the orators' books to the active boys. 11. To good kings books are always welcome. 12. The soldiers are praised by the good king.

## SECTION 14.

## THIRD DECLENSION : GENITIVE PLURAL.

Some nouns form their genitive plural, not in *-um*, but in *-ium*.

The general rule is that nouns, whose genitive singular has more syllables than the nominative singular, take *-um*; nouns which have the same number of syllables in these cases take *-ium*.

<i>Nom. Sing.</i>	<i>Gen. Sing.</i>	<i>Gen. Plural.</i>
1. Miles	militis	militum.
Rex	regis	regum.
Orātor	oratoris	oratorum.
2. Hostis	hostis	hostium.
Cīvis	civis	civium.
Nāvis	navis	navium.

[34.] 1. Clamores hostium mulieres saepe terrent.  
 2. Regina libros oratorum saepe laudat. 3. Orator diligentiam civium Germanorum laudat. 4. Milites navibus hostium non terrentur. 5. Rex reginae epistulas sororum dat. 6. Hostes parvis copiis agros vastant. 7. Epistula hostium regi non grata est. 8. Hostes proras navium regum vident. 9. Regem, virum bonum, hostium clamores non terrent. 10. Rex numero navium contentus est. 11. Me clamores hostium nunquam terrent. 12. Regina hostium agros regis vastat.

[35.] 1. The king praises the diligence of the citizens. 2. The soldiers see the prows of the ships. 3. The brother praises the garden of his<sup>1</sup> sisters. 4. The slave sees the forces of the enemy. 5. The sailors decorate the prows of their<sup>1</sup> ships with roses. 6. The forces of the enemy do not frighten the king. 7. The

<sup>1</sup> *His, her, and their* are no longer printed in *italics*, but are still to be left out in Latin.

slaves see the ships of the merchant. 8. The citizens lay waste the lands of the enemy. 9. Julia has a large number of sisters. 10. The king is satisfied with the diligence of the citizens.

[36.] 1. The kings see the enemy's ships. 2. The slaves of my sisters are faithful. 3. The king is loved by his citizens. 4. The enemy see a large number of ships. 5. The shouts of the soldiers frighten the forces of the enemy. 6. The forces of the enemy frighten the unhappy citizens. 7. The king praises the diligence of his ancestors. 8. The boy sees the rewards of the active girls. 9. The ships of the enemy are praised by the king. 10. To the king of the enemy the war is welcome. 11. The king is satisfied to-day with the diligence of the soldiers. 12. The soldiers of the enemy frighten the citizens with their shouts.

## SECTION 15.

### THIRD DECLENSION : GENITIVE PLURAL—(*Continued*).

Some nouns, however, although they have the same number of syllables in all the cases of the singular, make their genitive plural in *-um* : so do :—

pater, mater, frater,  
juvenis and senex.

And others again, which have more syllables in the genitive than in the nominative singular, make their genitive plural in *-ium*. Among these are :—

- (a) A number of words, mostly of one syllable, ending in an "s" following a consonant. What, then, is the genitive plural of—ars, artis (art), pars, partis (part), mens, mentis (mind), frons, frontis (front)?

(b) Nox, os, vis, make—noctium, ossium, virium,  
and also some nouns in Section 17.

[37.] 1. Puellae epistulas matrum habent. 2. Senes diligentiam majorum saepe laudant. 3. Copiae regiae agros hostium vastant. 4. Senum pars regem, pars reginam, culpat. 5. Servi navium regiarum partem vident. 6. Juvenum pars laudat, pars culpat poetam. 7. Puellae saepe libris matrum non sunt contentae. 8. Copiae hostium partem agrorum regionum vastant. 9. Clamores mulierum copias regias non terrent. 10. Verba tua me hodie non terrent, orator! 11. Clamores hostium miserarum animos matrum terrent. 12. Puerorum partem culpat, partem laudat magister. 13. Parvae hostium copiae animos militum terrent. 14. Te, puer piger, magistri nunquam laudant! 15. Senex servis bonis et fidis pecuniam cotidie dat.

[38.] 1. The king praises the diligence of the young men. 2. The words of the orators frighten the citizens. 3. The words of the orators frighten the minds of the citizens. 4. The shouts of the citizens frighten the heart of the queen. 5. The old man blames the young man, the young man the old man. 6. The letters of their mothers are welcome to the boys. 7. The words of the old men do not frighten the enemy. 8. The words of the orator are praised by the citizens.

[39.] 1. Wars are never welcome to mothers. 2. The king of the enemy wastes the lands of the citizens with large forces. 3. The diligence of the soldiers is praised by the old men. 4. The forces of the enemy lay waste the broad lands of the merchants. 5. The boys are praised by their fathers, the girls by their mothers. 6. The citizens see the ships of the enemy, and the royal forces. 7. My father blames me, my mother praises *me*.<sup>1</sup> 8. The merchant gives wine to the lord, money to the slave. 9. The royal soldiers are not

<sup>1</sup> Words printed in *italics* are to be left out.



satisfied with the king's words. 10. The words of the old men are not always welcome to the minds of the young men.

### V. Coriolanus.

(*The words will be found in the Dictionary on p. 128.*)

Coriolānus, clarus Romanorum imperator, plebi Romanae ob superbiam invisus fuit. Ex urbe igitur expulsus, ad Volscos, acerrimos Romanorum hostes, contendit. Ab Volscis dux exercitūs factus, copias Romanas saepe vincit. Denique ad urbem summis Volscorum copiis vēnit. Frustra legati ex urbe veniunt, pacem-que implorant. Postremo, Veturia, mater, et Volumnia, uxor, ex urbe veniunt; et, lacrimis precibus-que mulierum commotus, exercitum removet. Ab Volscis, autem, ut proditor interficitur.

## SECTION 16.

### THIRD DECLENSION: ENDINGS OF NEUTER NOUNS.

Neuter nouns of the third declension have the same endings as other nouns, except that, like all neuter nouns, the nominative and accusative in both numbers are the same, and that these cases in the plural end in *-a*.

	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Nom.	Nomen	nomina.
Acc.	Nomen	nomina.
Gen.	Nominis	nominum.
Dat.	Nomini	nominibus.
Abl.	Nomine	nominibus.

[40.] 1. Roma caput Italiae est. 2. Nomen amici mei Alexander est. 3. Pater et mater pueris nomina

dant. 4. Poeta reginae pulchrum carmen dat. 5. Marcus caput parvum, animum magnum habet. 6. Pulchra poetae carmina saepe laudantur. 7. Senes tempora antiqua semper laudant. 8. Nomina librorum tuorum amico meo non sunt nota. 9. Nomina poetarum et oratorum magistro nota sunt. 10. Patres boni pueris et puellis vinum nunquam dant. 11. Marci longum, Balbi magnum, caput est. 12. Poetae a te, oratores a me, laudantur. 13. Nomina amicorum meorum Marco non sunt nota. 14. Poeta tempora antiqua longo carmine laudat. 15. Juvenis mercatori pecuniam tempore dat.

[41.] 1. Marcus praises the poet's songs. 2. Old men praise the times of their ancestors. 3. The girls adorn the queen's head with roses. 4. The girls see the heads of the old men. 5. The heads of the girls are beautiful. 6. The poet's songs are celebrated. 7. The old man blames the times. 8. The boys see your head. 9. The soldiers see the heads of the enemy. 10. The names of the slaves are known to the lords.

[42.] 1. The names of the celebrated poets are known to the citizens. 2. Your name is not known to my mother. 3. The poet praises the queen *in* a beautiful song. 4. The boy has a book full of songs. 5. Marcus's head is long and big. 6. The royal sailors see the ships of the enemy *in* time. 7. The poets praise the queen's beautiful songs. 8. The names of the slaves are known to the merchants. 9. The orator praises a part of the poet's song. 10. The boy has a book full of songs. 11. The king is not satisfied with the songs of the royal poet. 12. The orator praises the diligence of ancient times.

## SECTION 17.

## THIRD DECLENSION: NEUTER CASE-ENDINGS—

(Continued).

Neuter nouns ending in *-e*, *-al*, or *-ar*, make the ablative singular in *-i*, the nominative plural in *-ia*, and the genitive plural in *-ium*.—

	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Nom.	Animal	animalia.
Acc.	Animal	animalia.
Gen.	Animālis	animalium.
Dat.	Animali	animalibus.
Abl.	Animali	animalibus.

[43.] 1. Cives hostibus magna vectigalia pendunt. 2. Servum in conclavi tuo cotidie videt. 3. Equi calcaribus incitantur. 4. Parva animalia saepe impigra, magna pigra sunt. 5. Cives regi magnum numerum vectigalium pendunt. 6. Praemia saepe calcaria diligentiae sunt. 7. Rosae in horto, libri in conclavi tuo, sunt. 8. Parva animalia magna saepe capita habent. 9. In conclavi tuo multi et boni libri sunt. 10. Equos calcaribus, milites praemiis, incitant. 11. Servi libros tuos in sororis tuae conclavi vident. 12. Cives animos militum clamoribus incitant. 13. Marcus mercatori magnam pecuniam pendit. 14. Libri boni puerorum animos saepe incitant. 15. Servi partem regiorum conclavium vident.

[44.] 1. The enemy pay taxes to the king. 2. The citizens pay part of the taxes to the queen. 3. Small animals are often active. 4. He praises the diligence of the small animals. 5. The girls adorn the queen's rooms with roses. 6. There are many books in your

room. 7. The enemy urge on their horses with the spur. 8. The poet urges on the soldiers with his songs. 9. The father gives a horse to the good boy. 10. Your room is full of books. 11. The king is satisfied with a small tax. 12. Balbus urges on my horse with the spur. 13. The rooms of the king are high. 14. The words of the master urge on the lazy boys. 15. The queen has a large number of rooms.

## VI. Theseus and Ariadne.

In Creta insula magnum labyrinthum Daedälus aedificavit, plenum viarum flexuosarum. In medio labyrintho foedum monstrum, taurus partim, partim homo, habitabat. Monstrum, autem, rex Cretae, saevus homo, captivis saginabat. Inter miserandas illas victimas quondam erat Theseus, regulus Atticus. Ariadne, tamen, filia regis, plena misericordiae et amoris, juveni filum longum mirum-que gladium dat. Intrat, igitur, labyrinthum, filum-que ad portam alligat. Itaque juvenis auxilio fili certam viam in vasti aedificii flexuris servat. Tum gladio monstrum feliciter necat. Nec longa mora fuit. Theseus cum filia regis navi trans latum mare fugit. Vespere, autem, ad Naxum insulam veniunt. Media, tamen, nocte Theseus, ingratus juvenis, puellam fidam et amantem deserit; solus-que ad patriam redit.

## SECTION 18.

### THIRD DECLENSION: GENDER OF NOUNS BY TERMINATION.

#### *Masculine.*

General rule:—Nouns which end in *o*, *or*, *os*, *er*, *es* (when the other cases of nouns in *-es* have more syllables than the nominative singular), are masculine.



Decline :—

Sermo facetus	<i>witty conversation.</i>
Magnus clamor	<i>a loud shout.</i>
Mos antiquus	<i>the ancient custom.</i>
Agger altus	<i>a high rampart.</i>
Pes claudus	<i>a lame foot.</i>

There are many exceptions to this and the following rules—*mater*, *mulier*, *soror*, for instance, are of course feminine.

[45.] 1. Puer magnos et longos pedes habet. 2. Senes faceto juvenis sermone saepe delectantur. 3. Parvus est clarorum oratorum numerus. 4. Senex mores antiquos et tempora antiqua cotidie laudat. 5. Mores tui, puer, a magistris non laudantur! 6. Marcus, puer miser, pedibus claudus est. 7. Milites impigri equos semper calcaribus incitant. 8. Magni puerorum clamores matrem terrent. 9. Altus hostium agger animos militum terret. 10. Magnae hostium copiae agros regiones vastant. 11. Marcum et Balbum, amicos meos, in hortis regiis vident. 12. Multi domini fidis servis nunquam sunt contenti.

[46.] 1. Witty conversation delights old men. 2. The loud shouts frighten the girls. 3. Balbus has a lame foot. 4. The ramparts of the enemy are long and high. 5. The rampart of the enemy is high. 6. The merchants often give wine to the soldier. 7. The songs of the poets are known to my father. 8. The boy's head is small, his feet are big. 9. The citizens pay a part *only* of the taxes to the king. 10. The old man blames the bad manners of the times. 11. The royal soldiers urge on their horses with spurs. 12. The young man charms the old man with his witty conversation. 13. The master's room is full of books. 14. The king fears the loud shouts of the citizens. 15. Small animals have often big feet.

[47.]<sup>1</sup> 1. Multi homines carmina non amant. 2. Multis hominibus oratores non sunt noti. 3. Magister Balbi mores laudat, Marci culpat. 4. Pulchri colores florum tuorum a rege laudantur. 5. Multi et pulchri flores in hortis regiis sunt. 6. Copiae hostium castra magno aggere circumdant. 7. Marcus et Balbus pedibus claudi sunt. 8. Verba equitum animos militum non terrent. 9. Frater tuus longo sermone nunquam delectatur. 10. Castra hostium animos equitum non terrent. 11. Me flores pulchri, te arma equitum, delectant. 12. Prorae navium multis floribus ornantur.

[48.] 1. The names of many men are known to me. 2. The beautiful colours of the flowers delight the girl. 3. The soldiers surround the *camp* with a high rampart. 4. The horsemen urge on their horses with the spurs. 5. My father is delighted with a long talk. 6. The poet's songs delight many men. 7. Your father praises the beautiful colours of the flowers. 8. The names of many flowers are known to my sister. 9. Lazy men are always unhappy. 10. The gardens are full of beautiful flowers. 11. The enemy's cavalry lay waste the royal lands. 12. The king surrounds the camp with a high rampart. 13. Many men never pay the taxes. 14. The little girl gives many flowers to the queen. 15. The forces of the enemy lay waste part of the lands.

## VII. A Surprise.

Bello Aegyptio, dum milites nostri castra faciunt, intenti-que opere sunt, subito speculatores accurrunt. "Adeunt hostes," clamant. Et statim ex arbustis undique hostes exsurgunt, et multis saevis-que clamoribus in castra irruunt. Nostri confestim arma arripiunt.

<sup>1</sup> This and the following exercise should not be omitted, as new words are introduced.

Pauci extra castra orbes faciunt; ceteri ex vallo tela conjiciunt. Nostri multos amittunt: tandem hostes victi recedunt. Tum horribile spectaculum circa castra nostra erat. Corpora hominum, camelorum, equorum mixta jacent. Inveniuntur, etiam, inter mortuos feminae puerique parvi. Nostri, tamen, quamquam acri proelio fessi sunt, castra conficiunt. Neque nocturno tempore gemitus hostium vulneratorum militibus facultatem quietis dat.

## SECTION 19.

THIRD DECLENSION: GENDER—(*Continued*).

FEMININE RULE.

Those nouns in the third declension are feminine which end in *is*, *as*, *aus*, *x*, *s* (following another consonant), *es* (not increasing).

Decline:—

Navis longa	<i>a long ship (a war-ship).</i>
Media aestas	<i>midsummer.</i>
Summa laus	<i>the highest praise.</i>
Clara vox	<i>a clear voice.</i>
Magna pars	<i>a large part.</i>
Nigra nubes	<i>a black cloud.</i>

There are many exceptions to this rule also—*civis*, *hostis*, *juvenis*, *senex*, *rex*, the meaning shows to be masculine.

[49.] 1. Naves longae hostium milites nostros non terrent. 2. Laudes tuae, magister, impigrum puerum delectant! 3. Magna pars oratorum regem et reginam semper culpat. 4. Nautae magnas et nigras nubes timent. 5. Vox puellae magnae parti juvenum grata est. 6. Tempora nostra et mores nostri saepe culpantur. 7. Oratoris sermo facetus me, te longa verba, delectant.

8. Poeta parvos pedes et pulchrum caput puellae laudat.  
 9. Nigrae nubes nautas navium regiarum terrent. 10.  
 Laus pueris et magistris, servis et dominis, grata est.  
 11. Hostes media aestate castra alto aggere circum-  
 dant. 12. Aestas senibus et juvenibus, pueris et puellis,  
 grata est.

[50.] 1. The boys see the war-ships of the enemy.  
 2. Our war-ships are known to the enemy. 3. Wine is  
 welcome *in* midsummer. 4. Flowers are beautiful *in*  
 the middle of summer. 5. The master gives the highest  
 praise to the boys. 6. The girl's clear voice charms the  
 young men. 7. The black clouds frighten the sailor. 8.  
 The royal sailors fear the black cloud. 9. The boys see  
 a large part of the ships. 10. The master praises the  
 boy's clear voice. 11. Our king gives the lands of the  
 enemy to the cavalry. 12. Little animals have often  
 long names. 13. The names of the active young men  
 are known to the king. 14. Your sister's beautiful  
 voice delights me. 15. The boy gives a large part of  
 the beautiful flowers to his mother.

[51.]<sup>1</sup> 1. Equites regii in media urbe sunt. 2. Laus  
 pueri auribus matris grata est. 3. Parva animalia saepe  
 magnas aures habent. 4. Media nocte equites castra  
 hostium circumdant. 5. Multae urbis nostrae partes  
 puero notae sunt. 6. Nigrae nubes ab equitibus timen-  
 tur. 7. Media aestate pulchri sunt in hortis regiis florum  
 colores. 8. Demosthēnes, clarus orator, animos civium  
 saepe incitat. 9. Multos homines antiqua carmina  
 majorum nostrorum delectant. 10. Verba patrum et  
 matrum saepe pigros pueros incitant. 11. Prorae navium  
 longarum aestate semper floribus ornantur. 12. Rex,  
 vir bonus, equitibus impigris pecuniam, praemium dili-  
 gentiae, dat.

<sup>1</sup> This and the following exercise should not be omitted.



[52.] 1. The horses are lame *in* the feet. 2. Our city is known to many men. 3. The girl's clear voice delights our ears. 4. In the middle of the night shouts frighten the king. 5. At midnight the forces of the enemy lay waste our lands. 6. Our citizens do not fear the words of the orators. 7. The girls decorate the queen's head with flowers. 8. My brother is charmed with your conversation. 9. The girl has small and beautiful ears. 10. Praise is welcome to the minds of many men. 11. Many cities are known to the soldiers and sailors. 12. A great number of cities pay taxes to the king. 13. Your letter is welcome to our mother. 14. Our master is not satisfied with our diligence. 15. In midsummer my room is always full of flowers.

#### VIII. The Roman Army fights a Serpent.

Primo bello Punico Romani castra aliquando in Africa apud Bagrădam flumen ponunt; multisque proeliis copias hostium egregia militum virtute superant. Sed, paucis post diebus, apparet serpens ingentis magnitudinis; et exercitum fluminis usu prohibet. Milites primo ex vallo sagittis telisque serpentem petunt; deinde magnam manum Regŭlus consul educit. Serpens multos ingenti ore corripit; multos caudae voluminibus elidit; reliqui, metu percussi, ad castra celeriter fugiunt. Proximo die totus exercitus in campum educitur. Diu et acriter pugnatur. Tandem vero ballistas et catapultas admovent: crebris lapidum vulneribus serpens interficitur. Sanguis autem monstri vicinum flumen imbuit; et tota regio pestifero adflatu polluitur. Castra igitur Romani summovent. Corium, longum pedes centum et viginti, Romam mittunt. Cives in templo ponunt.



## SECTION 20.

## THIRD DECLENSION : NEUTER RULE.

The neuter terminations are *ar, ur, us, l, a, n, c, e, t.*

*ar, ur, us.*

Decline :—

Calcar acutum	<i>a sharp spur.</i>
Crebrum fulgur	<i>the frequent lightning.</i>
Litus longum	<i>the long shore.</i>

[53.] 1. Tempora antiqua laudat senex, nostra culpam. 2. Milites nautas hostium et naves in litore vident. 3. Pueri multa genera animalium in hortis vident. 4. Equites acuto calcari equos semper incitant. 5. Crebra fulgura animos puellarum non terrent. 6. Opera Cicerōnis nota sunt seni et juveni. 7. Non frigus, non nubes, non fulgura te terrent! 8. Magnam vocem militis mulier timet. 9. Pueri corpora multorum nautarum in litore vident. 10. Tempora antiqua ab oratoribus et poetis laudantur. 11. Magni tui clamores auribus nostris non sunt grati. 12. Magnae hostium copiae cotidie urbem nostram circumdant. 13. Milites praemiis regis nunquam sunt contenti. 14. Puellae nigris nubibus saepe terrentur. 15. Opera oratoris et poetae a multis hominibus laudantur.

[54.] 1. The sailors love the shore. 2. The enemy's horses fear the lightning. 3. The sister gives spurs to the brother. 4. The frequent lightning-flashes frighten the women. 5. The horseman's spurs are sharp. 6. The active boy does not fear the cold. 7. There are many kinds of books. 8. The cold to-day is great. 9. The head is an important (*magnus*) part of the body. 10. In midsummer the shore is welcome.

[55.] 1. At midnight the cold is often great. 2. Our men see the ships on (*in*, with *abl.*) the shore. 3. The works of the orators are known to many. 4. The black clouds frighten the sailors of the war-ship. 5. There are many gardens in our city. 6. There are flowers of many kinds in the garden. 7. My father praises the poet's works. 8. The girls and the women fear the frequent lightning-flashes. 9. The cavalry's sharp spurs urge the horses on. 10. The soldiers see the enemy's bodies on the shore.

### SECTION 21.

THIRD DECLENSION : NEUTER RULE—(*Continued*).

l, a, n, c, e, t.

Decline :—

Magnum animal	<i>a large animal.</i>
Pulchrum poëma	<i>a beautiful poem.</i>
Flumen latum	<i>the broad stream.</i>
Album lac	<i>white milk.</i>
Latum mare	<i>the wide sea.</i>
Magnum caput	<i>a big head.</i>

[56.] 1. Poemata tua ab amicis meis saepe laudantur. 2. Nautae media aestate latum mare transeunt. 3. Amicus tuus librum in conclavi meo legit. 4. Magna hostium corpora nostros milites terrent. 5. Matres pueris fessis multum lac dant. 6. Multa genera animalium in lato mari sunt. 7. Mercatores naves hostium longas timent. 8. Magister clari opera Ciceronis cotidie legit. 9. Balbus et Marcus amicis meis nomina sunt. 10. Cives magnam vectigalium partem tempore non pendunt. 11. Carmina poetae nostri a multis laudantur. 12. Puer caput latum, pedes magnos, aures parvas, habet.

[57.] 1. Many animals have not feet. 2. My friends often read your poem. 3. There are many streams in

the lands of the enemy. 4. *He* gives milk to his sister, wine to his brother. 5. Sailors love the broad sea. 6. The royal rooms are beautiful. 7. My mother is tired with the long conversation. 8. The forces of the enemy cross the broad river. 9. My father is always reading your poems. 10. Your room charms me. 11. The horse crosses the broad river. 12. The girl fears rivers and seas. 13. His sister gives *some* milk to the tired boy. 14. The names of many books are known to the boys. 15. The citizens pay many taxes to the king.

### IX. A Battle.

Caesar media nocte castris omnibus copiis exit ; et iter ad flumen facit. Nota tamen est res hostibus ; et prima luce nostri copias hostium pedestres in summo colle vident. Tum Caesar in dextro et sinistro cornu equites collocat, et militum animos paucis verbis ad pugnam incitat. "Milites, omnis spes civitatis Romanae in virtute nostra est ; fortibus victoria est." Hostes primo sinistrum exercitus latus, deinde dextrum carpunt ; postremo in medios ordines impetum faciunt. Longa et acris pugna, crebra vulnera. Non terrent nostros ingentia hostium corpora, magnique clamores. Pugnam in manibus faciunt, et brevi tempore hostes ex omnibus partibus superant. Dux hostium in manus nostras incidit. Caesar egregiam militum virtutem laudat ; et omnibus praemia dat. Tum summa celeritate domum redeunt, et a civibus magna laude excipiuntur.

## SECTION 22.

### EXCEPTIONS TO THE GENDER RULES FOR THE THIRD DECLENSION.

There are, as has been said, many exceptions to these rules. Nouns in *-o* are masculine, but those in *-io*, *-do*,

-go are feminine. *Oratio*, *multitudo*, *imago*, are therefore feminine. There are also many exceptions to the rule that the termination -is is feminine. *Mensis* and *finis*, for instance, with many others, are masculine.

[58.] 1. Orationes Ciceronis a magistro nostro cotidie laudantur. 2. Copiae hostium media aestate fines nostros vastant. 3. Nostri magnis copiis mense Januario castra hostium circumdant. 4. Naves longae hostium media nocte mare transeunt. 5. Marco magnae sunt aures, Alexandro parvae. 6. Mense Junio pulchri sunt in hortis nostris flores. 7. Nostra urbs magnos et latos fines habet. 8. Magna hostium multitudo agros nostros vastat. 9. Pulchra imago Ciceronis, oratoris clari, conclave meum ornat. 10. Nautae nostri magnam navium longarum multitudinem in litore vident. 11. Poemata tua a multis hominibus leguntur et laudantur. 12. Fratrum Marcus piger, Alexander fessus, est.

[59.] 1. The orations of our king are known to many *men*. 2. The cavalry of the enemy lay waste our territories. 3. Many busts of our ancestors adorn our rooms. 4. In the month of January our ships cross the sea. 5. There is a great multitude of animals in the sea. 6. Many men praise my speeches. 7. Our king has great and wide territories. 8. They see a great multitude of the enemy. 9. In the month of June he crosses the sea. 10. They read the celebrated orations every day.

[60.] 1. Many horsemen are crossing the river. 2. The citizens blame the king's long speech. 3. The voices of the king and queen are known to the citizens. 4. A beautiful image of the queen adorns the king's room. 5. Our sailors are not afraid of black clouds. 6. The enemy's cavalry lay waste the royal territories. 7. The king and queen are beloved by the citizens. 8. Lightning is frequent in the month of June. 9. The

master gives wine to the tired slaves. 10. There is a multitude of flowers in the gardens.

## SECTION 23.

## ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

Adjectives of this declension are not so fully declined as those of the second declension. They have seldom three forms for the three genders, and often only one. Those that end in *-is* are thus declined :—

*Singular.*

	<i>Masc. &amp; Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
Nom.	Fortis	fortě.
Acc.	Fortem	fortě.
Gen.		Fortis.
Dat.		Forti.
Abl.		Forti.

*Plural.*

	<i>Masc. &amp; Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
Nom. & Acc.	Fortes	fortia.
Gen.		Fortium.
Dat. & Abl.		Fortibus.

[61.] 1. Omne genus animalium capita habet. 2. Omni tempore amici hominibus grati sunt. 3. Classis Romana media aestate mare transit. 4. Equites Romani omnes hostium copias superant. 5. Mense Junio breves, Januario longae, noctes sunt. 6. Rex Marcum, virum fortem et bonum civem, laudat. 7. Senex majores, viros fortes et graves, laudat. 8. Oratio regis a Marco, forti viro, laudatur. 9. Imagines majorum, virorum fortium, conclave regium ornant. 10. Omne genus operum militibus notum est. 11. Gravia magistri verba et me et te incitant. 12. Orationes regis graves sunt, et ab omnibus laudantur.



[62.] 1. Our slaves are both (*et*) faithful and brave. 2. The prows of the war-ships are heavy. 3. The oration is long, the poem short. 4. Balbus praises the diligence of all his friends. 5. In mid-winter our fleet overcomes the Romans. 6. Our ships overcome the Roman fleet. 7. Winter is the time of long nights, summer of short. 8. All the works of Cicero are known to our master. 9. The boy's head is long, his body short. 10. Marcus's voice is clear, Alexander's deep (*gravis*). 11. All the enemy's forces lay waste our territories. 12. The enemy's war-ships are seen on the long shore. 13. The horseman's spurs are big and heavy. 14. The enemy pay a large sum of money to the Romans. 15. The words of the queen are praised by Balbus, a brave citizen.

## SECTION 24.

ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION—(*Continued*).

*Sapiens* and *audax* are declined thus:—

*Singular.*

	<i>Masc. &amp; Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
Nom.	Sapiens.	
Acc.	Sapientem	sapiens.
Gen.	Sapientis.	
Dat.	Sapienti.	
Abl.	{ Sapienti. Sapiente.	

*Plural.*

	<i>Masc. &amp; Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
Nom. & Acc.	Sapientes	sapientia.
Gen.	Sapientium.	
Dat. & Abl.	Sapientibus.	

*Singular.*

	<i>Masc. &amp; Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
Nom.	Audax.	
Acc.	Audācem	audax.
Gen.	Audacis.	
Dat.	Audaci.	
Abl.	Audaci.	

*Plural.*

	<i>Masc. &amp; Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
Nom. & Acc	Audaces	audacia.
Gen.	Audacium.	
Dat. & Abl	Audacibus.	

[63.] 1. Nihil sapientium animos terret. 2. Parva puella ingens animal timet. 3. Rex mercatoribus ingentem pecuniam dat. 4. Opera Ciceronis pueris saepe difficilia sunt. 5. Dominus servo, opere difficili fesso, vinum dat. 6. Oratio regis longa, reginae brevis, est. 7. Omnia fortibus et audacibus facilia sunt. 8. Puer animo audaci mare media hieme transit. 9. Pater tuus, vir sapiens, opera Ciceronis legit. 10. Omnia litora nostri maris nautis audacibus nota sunt.

[64.] 1. Nothing is difficult to active men. 2. The boy does not fear the huge body of the enemy. 3. Praise is welcome to all men. 4. To the daring mind nothing is difficult. 5. The names of the wise *men* are known to the boys. 6. The bodies of our enemies are huge. 7. The days are short in the month of January. 8. The royal forces overcome our cavalry. 9. The heads of many animals are huge. 10. Many works are difficult to the lazy, easy to the active. 11. The cold in winter is great and severe (*gravis*). 12. The ships of our fleet are enormous.

## SECTION 25.

ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION—(*Continued*).

Adjectives in *-er* of the third declension have three endings in the nominative singular, and are declined like *acer* :—

*Singular.*

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
Nom.	Acer	acris	acre.
Acc.	<i>Masc. &amp; Fem.</i> Acrem		<i>Neut.</i> acre.
Gen.		Acris.	
Dat. & Abl.		Acri.	

*Plural.*

	<i>Masc. &amp; Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
Nom. & Acc.	Acres	acria.
Gen.		Acrium.
Dat. & Abl.		Acribus.

The one adjective *celer* is thus declined :—

*Singular.*

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
Nom.	Cēler	celēris	celere.
Acc.	Celerem		celere.
Gen.		Celeris.	
Dat. & Abl.		Celeri.	

*Plural.*

	<i>Masc. &amp; Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
Nom. & Acc.	Celeres	celeris
Gen.		Celerum.
Dat. & Abl.		Celeribus.

[65.] 1. Domini acris vox omnibus servis nota est. 2. Classis Romana mense Decembri mare transit. 3. Navis hostium celeris brevi tempore nostrum mare transit. 4. Equites Romani copias hostium pedestres superant. 5. Equi equitum celerum fessi sunt. 6. Milites a Marco, acri viro et impigro, laudantur. 7. Mense Decembri magnum et acre saepe frigus est. 8. Equites celeres equos calcaribus acutis incitant. 9. Copiae nostrae pedestres ab equitibus hostium superantur. 10. Puer miser sinistra aure surdus, pede dextro claudus est.

[66.] 1. Quick horses delight the horseman. 2. Nothing is difficult to the daring young man. 3. The quick cavalry of the enemy overcome our forces. 4. The boy sees the horses of the quick cavalry. 5. Marcus is a spirited and active man. 6. The enemy's horses are spirited, their horsemen active. 7. Nothing is difficult for the daring horsemen. 8. In the month of December the nights are long. 9. Our *men* overcome the infantry forces of the enemy. 10. The enemy overcome our men in a short time. 11. The soldier is lame *in* the left foot. 12. The active sailors cross the sea every day.

#### X. A Roman Account of Britain.

Omnium insularum, quae Romanis notae sunt, maxima est Britannia ; et insulas, quidem, nostri maris<sup>1</sup> multis partibus superat. Hominum est infinita multitudo ; crebra aedificia ; pecorum magnus numerus. Arborum omnium generum copia est. Aurum, et argentum, et alia metalla, inveniuntur. Frigus non est magnum ; caelum autem crebris imbribus ac nebulis foedum. Unum latus insulae ad Galliam, alterum ad Hispaniam, alterum ad Germaniam spectat. Incolarum humanissimi sunt

<sup>1</sup> "Our sea" to a Roman is the Mediterranean.

qui Cantium incolunt: nam huc naves ex Gallia omnes et mercatores veniunt. Galli, ut est fama, hanc maritimam partem occupabant; aedificia Gallicis similia, mores idem, sermo haud multum diversus. Non notae sunt Britannis segetes, sed lacte et carne vivunt, pellibusque vestiuntur. Corpora vitro inficiunt, quod caeruleum efficit colorem. Crines longi sunt; labrum superius non radunt. In bello ingenti virtute pugnant.

### Recapitulatory Exercises.<sup>1</sup>

A. 1. Balbus, vir fortis et sapiens, dextro pede claudus, et sinistra aure surdus, est. 2. Multorum hominum animi pecunia et praemiis incitantur. 3. Omnia Quinto, viro forti et impigro, facilia sunt. 4. Rex sermone Marci, faceti hominis, saepe delectatur. 5. Poeta, vir sapiens, carmina regis nunquam non laudat. 6. Diligentia servi nigri, fidi et impigri hominis, saepe a domino laudatur. 7. Prorae navium nostrarum hodie a nautis floribus ornantur. 8. Mulieres miserae crebro fulgure et nigris nubibus terrentur. 9. Mores antiquorum temporum semper ab oratore, summo viro, laudantur. 10. Animi matrum clamoribus audacium hostium terrentur. 11. Regem hostium, ingentem hominem, nihil terret. 12. Verba Ciceronis, summi viri et boni civis, omnibus grata sunt.

B. 1. In the month of December the soldiers are not in arms. 2. My friends are charmed with our letter. 3. They give milk to the little girls, wine to the big boys. 4. The lazy (plur.) praise the body, the wise the mind. 5. The winter is keen, and the cold severe (*gravis*). 6. The unfortunate (*miser*) slave has many *things* on his head. 7. The Roman fleet does not cross the sea in mid-winter. 8. At midnight the cold is often

<sup>1</sup> To be omitted or not at discretion.



great. 9. The works of Cicero, a good citizen, charm all men. 10. The brother's voice is deep, the sister's shrill.

C. 1. Quintus has black, Marcus white slaves. 2. The praises of our ancestors are not always pleasing to our ears. 3. The frequent lightning delights the boy and frightens the girl. 4. A great number of ships are seen on the shore in winter. 5. Our city has a great number of taxes. 6. The old men pay the money to the merchant in time. 7. The sharp spurs of the cavalry frighten the unfortunate horses. 8. Nothing is difficult to the active and daring boy. 9. The young man likes few words, the old man many. 10. The Roman soldiers surround the camp with a high and broad rampart.

D. 1. He has books of all kinds in his room; he never reads *them*. 2. My friends Marcus and Quintus are always praising the diligence of their fathers. 3. The sailors praise the king's long speech with loud shouting. 4. My brother is reading the old man's long poem with great industry. 5. The names of many animals are known to the wise. 6. The merchant often crosses the sea in a small and swift ship. 7. The king gives a beautiful likeness of the poet to the queen. 8. My room is full of your books. 9. The infantry forces of the enemy are defeated every day by our cavalry. 10. In the middle of the summer the royal forces cross the river, and lay waste the territories of the enemy.

## SECTION 26.

### THE FOURTH DECLENSION.

These nouns end either in *-us* or in *-u*. Those that end in *-us* are, as a rule, masculine; those that end in *-u* are always neuter.

	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Nom.	Exercitūs	exercitūs.
Acc.	Exercitum	exercitūs.
Gen.	Exercitūs	exercituum.
Dat.	Exercitui (exercitu)	exercitibus.
Abl.	Exercitu	exercitibus.

[67.] 1. Exercitui Romano et copiae pedestres et equites sunt. 2. Fluctus ingentes miseram navem in litus agunt. 3. Crebri hostium impetus nostros in mare agunt. 4. Nihil exercitibus Romanis difficile est. 5. Hostes magno impetuum numero nostros superant. 6. Puer piger a magistro, viro acri et sapiente, culpatur. 7. Nostri brevem et acrem impetum in hostes faciunt. 8. Media hieme fluctus saepe ingentes sunt. 9. Sapiens non nubes, non fulgura, non fluctuum impetum, timet. 10. Hostes equos calcaribus incitant, et magnum in nostros impetum faciunt.

[68.] 1. Nothing is difficult to our army. 2. The enemy by a quick attack overcome our men. 3. The force of the waves drives the ship on to (*in*, with acc.) the shore. 4. The cavalry make a charge on our foot-forces. 5. The Roman armies are often defeated by the enemy. 6. The old man is lame to-day *in* his left foot. 7. The daring sailor does not fear the rush of the waves. 8. The foot-forces cross the broad river. 9. The frequent attacks of the enemy frighten our men. 10. Marcus is always active; Balbus does (*agit*) nothing. 11. In the month of December there is nothing in our garden. 12. The enemy have many kinds of ships.

## SECTION 27.

FOURTH DECLENSION—(*Continued*).

Neuter nouns in *-u* are declined like *cornu* :—

	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Nom. & Acc.	Cornu	cornua.
Gen.	Cornūs	cornuum.
Dat. & Abl.	Cornu	cornibus.

A few nouns in *-us* are feminine; for example, *manus*, a hand, and *quercus*, an oak (as nearly all names of trees).

[69.] 1. Cornua multorum animalium acuta sunt. 2. Dextrum nostrorum cornu ab hostibus superatur. 3. Multae et antiquae quercus in horto sunt. 4. Aves parvae media aestate in hortis canunt. 5. Equitum pars in sinistro cornu, pars in dextro, est. 6. Magna avium multitudo in summa quercu<sup>1</sup> canit. 7. Puella manus parvas et parvos pedes habet. 8. Dextrum exercitus cornu acrem impetum in nostros facit. 9. Multae naves hodie in magno portu sunt. 10. Aures, manus, pedes partes corporum nostrorum sunt.

[70.] 1. Many animals have horns. 2. All the cavalry are on the right wing. 3. The waves drive the ship into harbour. 4. The harbours are full of war-ships. 5. The boy has large hands and small feet. 6. The master has a book in his left hand. 7. Many birds are singing on the top of the oak. 8. The harbour is welcome to the tired sailors. 9. The

<sup>1</sup> *Summus* "highest," but *summa quercus* means not "the highest oak," but "the oak where it is highest," i.e. "the top of the oak."

force of the waves drives the war-ships into harbour.  
 10. The whole army is in the territories of the Germans.  
 11. The boy has a book in his left hand, a flower in his right.  
 12. All the harbours of our shore are known to the sailors.

## SECTION 28.

FOURTH DECLENSION—(*Continued*).

*Domus*, a house, belongs to this declension, though some of its cases are formed according to the second declension. In gender it is feminine.

	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Nom.	Domus	domūs.
Acc.	Domum	domos, (sometimes domus).
Gen.	Domūs	domorum (sometimes, domuum).
Dat.	Domui	domibus.
Abl.	Domo (sometimes, domu)	domibus.

At home, domi.

(To) home, domum.

From home, domo.

[71.] 1. Marcus amicum meum domi tuae saepe videt.  
 2. Magnum domorum numerum aedificant mercatores.  
 3. Miles aestate domo exit, hieme domum redit. 4. Mater mea hodie foris, pater domi est. 5. Servi mane domo exeunt, vespere redeunt domum. 6. Classis Romana media nocte in portum redit. 7. Vespere impetus fluctuum navem in portum agit. 8. Mane equites in agros hostium exeunt. 9. Aves parvas domos in summa quercu faciunt. 10. Multae imagines majorum domum nostram ornant.

[72.] 1. The boy returns home every day. 2. In winter old men are always at home. 3. My friend is satisfied with our house. 4. The merchant's house is large, the master's small. 5. The boys return home in the month of December. 6. Marcus is always at home, Balbus out of doors. 7. The merchant builds many houses for his slaves. 8. On the left wing are the servants of the horsemen. 9. The king is building a big harbour for the citizens. 10. Many animals have not hands. 11. The daring boys are on the top of the oak. 12. My mother never goes out from home in the winter.

## SECTION 29.

## THE FIFTH DECLENSION.

The nouns of this declension end in *-es*, and are feminine :—

	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Nom.	Res	res.
Acc.	Rem	res.
Gen.	Rei	rērum.
Dat.	Rei	rēbus.
Abl.	Re	rebus.

Dies, however, is masculine, though in the singular sometimes feminine.

[73.] 1. Balbus rebus in adversis contento animo est. 2. Magna est spes victoriae in animis fortium militum. 3. Naves hieme portu nunquam exeunt. 4. Servi domino ingentem domum in litore aedificant. 5. Marcus multos dies domi meae manet. 6. Opera Ciceronis magnam partem diei legunt. 7. Mercator nunquam



domi est ; semper mare transit. 8. Sapiens rebus in adversis bonam spem habet. 9. Copiae nostrae paucos dies in finibus hostium manent. 10. Rebus in adversis pauci, multi in secundis, hominibus amici sunt.

[74.] 1. Adversity does not frighten the minds of the wise. 2. Marcus does many things every day. 3. In the evening the sailors return into harbour. 4. The days are short to the active, long to the lazy. 5. The wise man never fears adversity. 6. All the hope of the soldiers is in the king. 7. Adversity is known to all men. 8. There is a hope of prosperity in the minds of the citizens. 9. The boys are often out of doors in the summer. 10. The young men have good hopes. 11. The boys remain at home *for* a few days (acc.) 12. The hope of victory urges on the minds of the soldiers.

## XI. A Ghost.

Athenodōrus, philosophus, spatiosam et capacem domum Athenis exiguo pretio emit. Aliquot dies ibi feliciter habitabat. Tandem per silentium noctis, dum librum legit, strepitum vinculorum, longius primo, deinde e proximo, audit. Mox apparet senex: os pallidum est; corpus macie confectum; vestes squalidae; longa barba; capillus horridus; cruribus compedes, manibus catenas, gerit quatitque. Stat monstrum, digitoque Athenodoro adnuit. Surgit philosophus, tollitque lumen, effigiem secuturus. Ibat illa lento gradu: sequitur Athenodorus. Tandem deflexit in aream domūs: tunc dilapsa deserit comitem. Athenodorus signum loco ponit. Postero die locum effodit: inveniuntur ossa catenis implicita.

## SECTION 30.

## THE COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES: THE COMPARATIVE.

*Altus, high; altior, higher.*

(*Gratus, welcome; gratior, more welcome.*)

*Brevis, short; brevior, shorter.*

*Altior, gratior, brevior* are called the comparatives of *altus, gratus, brevis*.

To form the comparative the rule is to take the genitive singular of the adjective, and change the *-i* or *-is* into *-ior*; so—

*altus—alti—altior; brevis—brevis—brevior.*

The comparative is thus declined:—

	<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
	<i>M. &amp; F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M. &amp; F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
Nom.	Brevior	brevius.	Breviores	breviora.
Acc.	Breviōrem	brevius.	Breviores	breviora.
Gen.	Brevioris.		Breviorum.	
Dat.	Breviori.		Brevioribus.	
Abl.	Breviore.		Brevioribus.	

[75.] 1. Aestate quam hieme noctes breviores sunt. 2. Magister verbis gravioribus puerum culpat. 3. Opera Ciceronis quam Caesāris difficiliora sunt. 4. Poetae Graeci quam Romani clariores sunt. 5. Milites regem de omnibus rebus certiores faciunt. 6. Caesar milites de adventu regis certiores facit. 7. Pueri quam puellae audaciores sunt. 8. Longiores hodie epistulae sunt. 9. Fulgura aestate quam hieme crebriora sunt. 10. Agger noster quam hostium altior est. 11. Prorae nostrarum navium quam hostium altiores sunt. 12. Res adversae hominibus saepe quam res secundae utiliores sunt.

[76.] 1. The Romans are more daring than the enemy. 2. Julia is more beautiful than Cornelia. 3.

Horses are more useful to men than birds. 4. Your arrival was more welcome than mine to our father. 5. Balbus has braver slaves than Quintus. 6. Marcus's conversation is wittier than Quintus's. 7. The days are shorter in winter than in summer. 8. The enemy make a more vigorous (*acer*) attack to-day. 9. Caesar informs the soldiers about (*de*, with abl.) all matters. 10. The soldiers inform Caesar about the enemy's charge. 11. The soldiers are braver than the citizens. 12. The mind is more useful to men than the body. 13. Things are more useful than words. 14. Your poem is more beautiful than *that* of your brother. 15. Marcus informs his father of the arrival of the merchant.

*Nihil utilius quam pecuniā est* is not the only way in which "Nothing is more useful than money" can be turned. One may also say—*Nihil utilius pecuniā est*, "quam" being left out, and the following noun put in the ablative.

[77.] 1. Marcus Quinto non est facetior. 2. Pueri puellis non semper sunt fortiores. 3. Quid nave longa pulchrius est? 4. Quid portu fessis nautis gratius est? 5. Vox tua mea voce non est clarior. 6. Quid mense Junio quercu gratius est? 7. Quid miseris sermone sapientis utilius est? 8. Nihil matri adventu tuo gratius est.

[78.] 1. Quintus is not more daring *than* Marcus. 2. The brother is not wiser *than* the sister. 3. What is more uncertain *than* hope? 4. Nothing is more uncertain *than* victory. 5. Young men are not wiser *than* old men. 6. The mind is more useful to men *than* the body. 7. What is more useful to men *than* the hands? 8. Poems are not more useful *than* speeches. 9. The hands are not more useful *than* the feet. 10. The soldier is not always more daring *than* the merchant.

## SECTION 31.

THE COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES—(*Continued*).

## THE SUPERLATIVE.

Altus, *high* ; altior, *higher* ; altissimus, *highest*.Brevis, *short* ; brevior, *shorter* ; brevissimus, *shortest*.

The superlatives of most adjectives are formed by changing the *-i* or *-is* of the genitive singular into *-issimus*.

The superlative *altissimus* means not only “highest” or “most high,” but “very high.”

[79.] 1. Dies hieme saepe brevissimi sunt. 2. Quintus omnium militum audacissimus est. 3. Vox puellae clarissima et dulcissima est. 4. Pueri saepe dulcissimum vinum amant. 5. Quid te, carissime frater, terret? 6. Omnium puellarum Julia hodie tristissima est. 7. Multa flumina Asiae quam Europae latiora sunt. 8. Epistolae pueri longissimae patrem delectant. 9. Aristophānes omnium poetarum facetissimus est. 10. Quintus sapientissimus, Marcus sapientior, est. 11. Hostium fortissimi sunt Germani. 12. Mater puerum de morte fratris certiore facit. 13. Omnium puerorum Balbus hodie tristissimus est. 14. Urbs nostra clarissima est, et omnibus hominibus nota. 15. Rex, vir fortissimus et sapientissimus, mortem non timet. 16. Quid omnibus animalibus vita carius est? 17. Omnium navium nostra longissima est. 18. Orator, vir sapientissimus, a civibus amatur. 19. Roma omnium urbium clarissima est. 20. Omnium rerum mors tristissima, vita dulcissima, est.

[80.] 1. Hands are very useful to men. 2. My

brother is very sad to-day. 3. What frightens you, dearest sister? 4. Quintus is the bravest of the boys. 5. Our city is very celebrated. 6. Your arrival is most delightful. 7. *My* dearest brother, all men praise you! 8. Your letter is very welcome and very pleasant. 9. Of the Roman orators Cicero is the most famous. 10. My mother and sister are very sad to-day. 11. What is dearer to men than life? 12. The bravest of the soldiers do not fear death.

## XII. Arminius, the German Leader, defeats the Romans.

Quintilius Vārus exercitu Romano in Germaniam vēnit, et Germanos pessimo modo tractat. Multa enim vectigalia postulat a Germanis, qui neque aurum neque argentum possident; legibus etiam Romanorum parere, et linguā Latinā in iudiciis dicere jubet. Armīnius, autem, dux Germanorum, cives a tanta tamque superba Romanorum dominatione liberare constituit. Varus igitur per silvam densissimam iter facit. Subito Arminius ingentibus totius Germaniae copiis impetum in Romanos facit. Romani, longi labore itineris fessi, impetum Germanorum non sustinent: plurimos in pugna, alios in fuga Germani interficiunt; ceteros capiunt. Varus autem gladio se ipse interficit. Sic unus vir, prudentia et virtute, Germanos a dominatione Romanorum liberat. Imperator Augustus, simul ac nuntium magnae illius cladis accipit, maximo dolore adfectus, exclamat, "Quintili Vare, legiones redde!" Germania autem ab illo tempore libera erat.



## SECTION 32.

THE SUPERLATIVE—(*Continued*).

1. Pulcher, *beautiful*; pulcherrimus, *most beautiful*.  
Adjectives in *-er* form the superlative by adding *-rimus* to the nominative.
2. A few adjectives in *-is* form the superlative by changing the *-is* into *-rimus*.

Facilis, facillimus.

Difficilis, difficillimus.

Similis, simillimus.

Dissimilis, dissimillimus.

[81.] 1. Mores puellarum interdum dissimillimi sunt. 2. Omnium sororum tuarum Julia nunc longe pulcherrima est. 3. Frater et soror moribus dissimillimi sunt. 4. Aulus nunc omnium longe pauperrimus est. 5. Julia longe difficillimam libri partem nunc legit. 6. Rex Aulo, homini pauperrimo, pecuniam dat. 7. Senes saepe hieme nunquam domo exeunt. 8. Vita, hominibus brevissima, multis animalibus brevior est. 9. Poemata Vergilii et Horatii pulcherrima sunt. 10. Athēnae (Athens) urbs longe clarissima totius Graeciae est.

[82.] 1. The boy is sometimes very lazy. 2. The colours of flowers are very unlike. 3. The queen is like to the king *in* character. 4. The merchant is now very poor. 5. The bravest soldiers sometimes fear death. 6. All men like prosperity. 7. The queen is a very beautiful woman. 8. His sister is now very like to Quintus. 9. Many things are very difficult for boys. 10. The young man is now reading very difficult books. 11. All my brothers love you, dearest mother! 12. Labiēnus informs Caesar of all matters every day.

## SECTION 33.

## IRREGULAR COMPARISON.

	<i>Comparative.</i>	<i>Superlative.</i>
Bonus, <i>good</i> ;	melior, <i>better</i> ;	optimus, <i>best</i> .
Malus, <i>bad</i> ;	pejor, <i>worse</i> ;	pessimus, <i>worst</i> .
Magnus, <i>great</i> ;	major, <i>greater</i> ;	maximus, <i>greatest</i> .
Parvus, <i>small</i> ;	minor, <i>smaller</i> ;	minimus, <i>smallest</i> .

*Obs.* Major (sometimes major natu, *i.e.* in birth) may also mean "older" or "elder." In the same way, maximus (natu) may mean "oldest" or "eldest," minor (natu) "younger," minimus (natu) "youngest."<sup>1</sup>

[83.] 1. Mores Marci quam Balbi multo meliores sunt. 2. Sapientissimi viri semper optimi sunt. 3. Nihil malo vino pejus, nihil bono melius, est. 4. Quid, pessime puer ! nihil te terret ? nihil incitat ? 5. Corpora Gallorum quam Germanorum multo majora sunt. 6. Maximae res, Marce, non semper sunt optimae ! 7. Quintus parvus, Balbus minor, Aulus minimus est. 8. Fratrum Marcus maximus, Quintus minimus est. 9. Marcus multis annis Quinto natu major est. 10. Filii saepe matribus quam patribus multo cariores sunt. 11. Quintus servos de morte domini certiores facit. 12. Mercator hodie quam heri multo tristior est. 13. Omnium puerorum Alexander hodie pigerrimus est. 14. Rex quam regina paucis annis natu minor est. 15. Mercator nautae pauperrimo magnam pecuniam dat.

[84.] 1. Marcus has by far the worst slaves. 2. Your house is much smaller than mine. 3. The boy's

<sup>1</sup> When the ages of relations are compared omit *natu*, otherwise insert it.

head *is* very small, his feet are very big. 4. The waves are smaller to-day than yesterday. 5. Balbus has a greater reward than his brother. 6. Our city has very good harbours. 7. The prows of our ships are very big. 8. The elder of the sisters is very beautiful. 9. The mother blames her elder son. 10. The father is always finding fault with his younger son.

[85.] 1. Girls are often frightened by the smallest things. 2. Our times are better than ancient *times*. 3. Your manners, dearest Balbus, are very good! 4. What is better for little girls *than* good milk? 5. The son is very like to his mother. 6. Aulus is the youngest of all. 7. The boy is much lazier to-day than yesterday. 8. My arrival was very welcome to all. 9. The sister is very unlike (to) her brother. 10. The master is building a very large and very beautiful house.

### XIII. The Punishments of Ixion, Sisyphus, and Tantalus.

Terribiles poenas pendunt (sic enim antiqui narrant) Ixion, Sisyphus, Tantalus.

Ixion, autem, ad rotam ferventem alligatus, semper in caelo volvitur.

Sisyphus, omne tempus ingens saxum adverso colle trudit. Quoties, autem, summum jam collem attingere videtur, subito ad imum devolvitur. Iterum iterumque summus ille labor renovatur.

Tantalus, in aqua collocatus, semper sitit. Nam quoties haustum aquae sumere vult, aqua recedit. Tum etiam poma super capite pendent: sed quoties manum porrigit, rami, vento moti, recedunt. Saxum etiam (ut alii narrant) capiti impendet: saxi ruinam timens, perpetuo metu cruciatur.

## SECTION 34

## NUMBERS : THE CARDINAL NUMBERS.

I. Unus -a -um.	XI. Undĕcim.
II. Duo.	XII. Duodecim.
III. Trēs.	XX. Viginti.
IV. Quattuor.	XXI. Unus et vi-
V. Quinque.	ginti or vi-
VI. Sex.	ginti unus.
VII. Septem.	100. C. Centum.
VIII. Octo.	200. CC. Ducenti, -ae, -a.
IX. Nōvem.	1000. M. Mille.
X. Dĕcem.	2000. IIM. Duo milia.

*Obs.* Other numbers will be found in the Dictionaries.

*Unus* is declined like *bonus*, except that the gen. sing. is *unius*, and dat. sing. *uni* in all genders (like *alius*, on p. 70).

*Duo* is declined :—

	<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
Nom.	Duo	duae	duo.
Acc.	Dūo and duos	duas	duo.
Gen.	Duorum	duarum	duorum.
Dat. & Abl.	Duōbus	duābus	duōbus.

*Tres* is declined :—

	<i>M. &amp; F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
Nom.	Tres	tria.
Acc.	Tres	tria.
Gen.	Trium.	
Dat. & Abl.	Tribus.	

The rest up to 100 are not declined at all.

Passus, -ūs, *a pace*.

Mille passus (nom. plur.), 1000 *paces, a mile*.

Duo milia passuum, 2000 *paces, two miles*.

*Mille* in the singular is indeclinable and is an adjective : *milia* (not *millia*), the plural, is declined, and is a noun.

[86.] 1. Copiae hostium uno die unum et viginti flumina transeunt. 2. Duo fratres hodie quam heri multo tristiores sunt. 3. Mille equites agros nostros vastant. 4. Seni pauperrimo duodecim filii, quinque filiae, sunt. 5. Duo milia militum castra aggere lato circumdant. 6. Conclave regum quinquaginta pedes longum est. 7. Undeviginti equites regem et reginam circumdant. 8. Viginti quinque naves longae in litore sunt. 9. Sescenta genera florum patri nostro nota sunt. 10. In urbe nostra oratores triginta, tredecim poetae, tria milia mercatorum sunt. 11. Caesar a finibus Gallorum milia passuum duodecim abest. 12. Copiae hostium duo milia passuum ab urbe absunt. 13. Frater sorore tribus annis major est. 14. Marcus Quinto duobus annis natu minor est. 15. Quintus unum et viginti annos natus est. 16. Domus nostra ab urbe quattuor milia passuum abest. 17. Mensis Februarius viginti octo dies habet. 18. Frater meus hodie duodeviginti annos natus est. 19. Portus magnus ab urbe septendecim milia passuum abest. 20. Soror mea undecim annos nata est.

[87.] 1. Marcus has one sister and two brothers. 2. The merchant has three sons and four daughters. 3. There are twenty kinds of flowers in the garden. 4. The boy is doing two things at (*in*) one time. 5. Of the three brothers Alexander is the youngest. 6. The sailors see a thousand horsemen on the shore. 7. The royal house has a hundred rooms. 8. Two thousand



sailors are on the shore of our sea. 9. The master has a thousand books. 10. Marcus and Balbus are very unlike *in* character.

[88.] 1. The enemy are a mile off. 2. The army is two miles off. 3. The forces of the enemy are two miles from the city. 4. The gardens are three miles from the harbour. 5. My brother is twenty-one years old to-day. 6. The winter is the gloomiest (*tristis*) part of the year. 7. My youngest sister is four years old. 8. Your house is five miles from ours. 9. The ships are a mile from the harbour. 10. The garden is two hundred feet (acc.) long, a hundred wide.

## SECTION 35.

### ORDINAL NUMBERS.

1st. Primus.	10th. Dēcīmus.
2nd. Secundus.	11th. Undecimus.
3rd. Tertius.	12th. Duodecimus.
4th. Quartus.	13th. Tertius decimus.
5th. Quintus.	20th. Vicesimus.
6th. Sextus.	21st. Unus et vicesimus.
7th. Septīmus.	100th. Centesimus.
8th. Octāvus.	1000th. Millesimus.
9th. Nōnus.	

All these are declined like *bonus*.

[89.] 1. Puer quintum Caesaris librum legit. 2. Hora diei decima Marcus domum redit. 3. Quintus de adventu tertiæ legionis Caesarem certiores facit. 4. Septima noctis hora Caesar omnibus copiis castris exit. 5. Caesar in dextro cornu decimam, in sinistro sextam, legionem habet. 6. Hostes septimo decimo die milia

passuum duo absunt. 7. Caesar triginta, Pompeius quinquaginta, naves habet. 8. Puer centesimam pecuniae partem fratri dat. 9. Marcus primus, Balbus secundus, Quintus tertius est. 10. Millesimam partem Marco, centesimam Balbo, dat.

[90.] 1. My brother is often first, sometimes second. 2. Caesar often praises the seventh legion. 3. A thousand birds are singing on the top of the oak. 4. The king gives the fifth part to the queen. 5. The soldiers return on the one and twentieth day. 6. The unhappy boy is five miles from home. 7. Yesterday he *was* seventh, to-day he is fourth. 8. An hour is a very small part of a year. 9. A few horsemen overcome a thousand enemies. 10. The ninth legion is always very brave. 11. At the sixth hour of the day the enemy return. 12. Marcus is older than his sister by three years.

#### XIV. Dates in Early English History.

Anno quinquagesimo quinto ante Christum natum Caesar primum in Britanniam vēnit, neque tamen diu in insula nostra manet. Deinde proximo anno iterum cum copiis vēnit. Post paucos autem menses copias reducit. Anno quadragesimo tertio post Christum natum Claudius, imperator Romanus, in Britanniam venit, et totam paulatim insulam in suam potestatem Romani redigunt. Annos circiter trecentos quinquaginta Romani insulam tenent. Vias sternunt, castra muniunt, domos villasque aedificant, frumentum serunt, muro ingenti feras Caledoniae gentes ab incursionibus prohibent; pacem Britannis dant. Anno autem circiter quadringentesimo decimo Romani legiones suas reducunt. Anno quadringentesimo quadragesimo nono Angli, majores nostri, primum navibus insulam capiunt.

## SECTION 36.

THE VERB *ESSE*, TO BE.INDICATIVE MOOD.—*Present Tense.**Singular.**Plural.*

- |                |  |                        |
|----------------|--|------------------------|
| 1. 1st Person. | Sum, <i>I am.</i>                      | Sumus, <i>we are.</i>  |
| 2. 2nd Person. | Es, <i>thou art</i> or <i>you are.</i> | Estis, <i>you are.</i> |
| 3. 3rd Person. | Est, <i>he, she, or it, is.</i>        | Sunt, <i>they are.</i> |

*Es* translates "you are" only when *one* person is spoken to.

[91.] 1. Fratre meo non tribus annis major sum.  
 2. Ego sum miles, tu nauta es. 3. Ego omnibus civibus carus sum: te omnes culpant. 4. Puer piger es, et patri tuo dissimillimus. 5. Milites hieme viginti naves aedificant. 6. Dextro pede claudus sum, et sinistra aure surdus. 7. Ego quattuordecim, tu duodecim annos natus es. 8. Patri simillima sum, matri dissimillima. 9. Optimi cives estis; vos omnes laudant. 10. Nos milites sumus, vos nautae estis. 11. Mane legio decima ad urbem redit. 12. Milites nostri omnium fortissimi esse dicuntur. 13. Athenae a Sparta centum quinquaginta milia passuum absunt. 14. Verba magistri animos puerorum ad majorem diligentiam incitant.

[92.] 1. *We*<sup>1</sup> are in the garden to-day. 2. I am first, you are second. 3. *You* are a very brave soldier, and a consummate (*summus*) orator. 4. I am lame, you are deaf. 5. The ships return in the evening to (*ad*) the harbour. 6. The boys are now returning home. 7. *We* are tired; your conversation is not welcome. 8. *I* am the youngest of all. 9. *We* are at home, you are out of doors. 10. *I* am very unhappy; *my* father

<sup>1</sup> Words in *italics* are to be left out.

never praises me. 11. *We* are very sad to-day ; *our* friends are very far away. 12. The very frequent lightning-flashes do not frighten the brave soldier. 13. You are very wise, we are not wise. 14. The harbour is two miles distant from the royal house. 15. The characters of young men and of old men are very unlike.

## SECTION 37.

THE VERB *ESSE*, TO BE—(*Continued*).*Future Tense.**Singular.**Plural.*

- |                              |                                |
|------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 1. Ero, <i>I shall be.</i>   | 1. Erimus, <i>we shall be</i>  |
| 2. Eris, <i>you will be.</i> | 2. Eritis, <i>you will be.</i> |
| 3. Erit, <i>he will be.</i>  | 3. Erunt, <i>they will be.</i> |

*Imperfect Tense.**Singular.**Plural.*

- |                           |                             |
|---------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1. Eram, <i>I was.</i>    | 1. Erāmus, <i>we were.</i>  |
| 2. Eras, <i>you were.</i> | 2. Erātis, <i>you were.</i> |
| 3. Erat, <i>he was.</i>   | 3. Erant, <i>they were.</i> |

[93.] 1. Balbe et Marce, amici mei carissimi, heri ubi eratis ?—In urbe, Quinte, eramus ! 2. Quando domi eris, mi Quinte ?—Quid ! ego semper sum domi. 3. Heri Romae eram, hodie Florentiae (in Florence) sum, cras Verōnae (in Verona) ero. 4. Ubi heri eras ?—A Roma longe aberam. 5. Cras viginti quinque naves longae in portu maximo erunt. 6. Priamo, regi Trojae (Troy), quinquaginta filii et quinquaginta filiae erant. 7. Legio decima longe fortissima esse dicitur. 8. Ubi vespere erunt ?—hora quinta semper ad urbem redeunt. 9. Temporibus Servii Tullii octoginta tria milia civium Romanorum erant. 10. Tu, Balbe, bonus puer es ; vos, Quinte et Marce, semper pigri eritis !

[94.] 1. To-morrow I shall be at home : where will you be ? 2. Where will *you* be in the winter ?—*I* shall be in the city, Balbus ! 3. *I* was yesterday in the royal gardens ; to-morrow *I* shall be at home. 4. Your arrival was very welcome to all, my dearest Marcus ! 5. Balbus, where were *you* yesterday ?—*I* was in the country. 6. *You* were always very good boys. 7. In the summer our father will be in Italy, we boys shall be at home. 8. My friends, when will *you* be at home ?—*We* shall be at home to-morrow. 9. The characters of the Gauls and Germans were very unlike. 10. *In* a few years the works of Caesar will be known to the boys. 11. Yesterday I was the first, you were second, Balbus was third. 12. Yesterday *you* were first, to-day *you* are third, to-morrow *you* will be fifth.

## SECTION 38.

THE VERB *ESSE*, TO BE—(Continued).*Perfect Tense.**Singular.**Plural.*

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. Fui, <i>I have been</i><br>(or) <i>I was.</i>         | 1. Fuimus, <i>we have been</i><br>(or) <i>we were.</i>                     |
| 2. Fuisti, <i>you have been</i><br>(or) <i>you were.</i> | 2. Fuistis, <i>you have been</i><br>(or) <i>you were.</i>                  |
| 3. Fuit, <i>he has been</i><br>(or) <i>he was.</i>       | 3. Fuērunt, { <i>they have been</i><br>and fuēre, { (or) <i>they were.</i> |

*Future Perfect Tense.**Singular.**Plural.*

- |                                       |   |
|---------------------------------------|---|
| 1. Fuēro, <i>I shall have been.</i>   | 1. Fuērīmus, <i>we shall have been.</i> |
| 2. Fuēris, <i>you will have been.</i> | 2. Fuērītis, <i>you will have been.</i> |
| 3. Fuērit, <i>he will have been.</i>  | 3. Fuērīnt, <i>they will have been.</i> |



*Pluperfect Tense.**Singular.*

1. Fuëram, *I had been.*
2. Fuëras, *you had been.*
3. Fuërat, *he had been.*

*Plural.*

1. Fuërāmus, *we had been.*
2. Fuërātis, *you had been.*
3. Fuërant, *they had been.*

[95.] 1. Athenis<sup>1</sup> saepissime, Romae nunquam, fuimus. 2. Septima legio saepe fuit omnium fortissima. 3. Mane domi fuerant, vespere foris erant. 4. Duos jam annos, mi carissime frater, Romae fuisti; quando domi eris? 5. Vos, amici, quam ego Athenis saepius fuistis! 6. Rebus in adversis gratissima sorori fuerint verba fratris. 7. Tu, mi Balbe, fratri meo optimus amicus fueris! 8. Pueri in hortis nostris saepissime fuerant. 9. Quintus jam sex annos Romae fuerat. 10. Servi Athenis saepissime esse dicuntur. 11. Optimus puer semper fueras, heri non eras bonus. 12. Balbus et fuit, et est, et semper erit, fidissimus amicus.

[96.] 1. You<sup>2</sup> have often been in Rome, Quintus! 2. My friends, you have very often been in Athens! 3. We shall be at home to-morrow. 4. I have been very often very unhappy. 5. We have been three days (acc.) in Athens. 6. The cold will have been very great in Rome. 7. You are very often out of doors: when will you be at home? 8. Few boys will have been more

<sup>1</sup> "In" or "at" before the name of a town is not translated by a separate word. The town name is put in the ablative, unless it is of the first or second declension *and singular*, when it is put in the genitive. So—Athenis (abl. of Athenae), "in Athens"; Carthagine (Carthago), "in Carthage"; Romae, "in Rome"; Tarenti, "in Tarentum."

<sup>2</sup> The pronouns which should be left out are no longer printed in *italics*. The endings of the verbs sufficiently express the person. A pronoun should not be used, unless there is particular emphasis, as in such a sentence as—I was at work, you were at play.

often in Rome. 9. You are and always will be a very lazy boy. 10. He had been already three hours (acc.) at home. 11. Your arrival will have been welcome to all. 12. I had been often in Rome, you had never been. 13. He is said to be very often in Rome. 14. The oak is two miles from our house. 15. I had been two years (acc.) in Rome, three in Athens.

#### XV. An Account of the Battle of Bannockburn.

Rex noster, piger homo et corporis voluptatibus deditus, tandem, crebris nostrorum cladibus commotus, exercitum comparat, et in fines hostium iter facit. Rex hostium, simul atque adventum nostrorum intellegit, locum deligit suis opportunum, nostris iniquissimum. Suos enim in humo sicca firmaque collocat; frontem tamen tergumque agminis continentes paludes cingunt. Sinistra flumen erat, dextra castellum, colle praecipiti impositum. Et, quod nostri equitibus praestant, crebras in palude foveas facit. Solum enim effodit, et insuper locum longuriis cratibusque sternit: tum humum gramenque injicit. Calones omnes servosque equitum post vicinum collem collocat. Tum adventum nostrorum exspectat.

#### XVI. Bannockburn—(*Continued*).

Nostri tandem sub vespere adveniunt. Noctem non quieti somnoque sed carminibus epulisque dant. Contra hostes silentio opem divinam precibus implorant. Postero die dux hostium suos talibus verbis ad pugnam incitat. "Milites! certamen nobis hodie pro liberis et uxoribus, pro parentibus et patria, est. Deus nobis aut victoriam aut mortem gloriosam dat. Si cui vita gloria carior est, domum ex pugna excedat!" Tum pugna committitur. Primo pedites sagittarii nostri in aciem inducuntur; sed equites hostium, incitatis equis, irruunt; et summa audacia nostros gladiis hastisque confodiunt:

nihil enim sagittarii praeter arcūs habent. Deinde equites nostri submittuntur; sed plerique, insidiarum ignari, in foveas proni incidunt. Nostris conturbatis, subito calones servique equitum in summo colle apparent. Nostri autem, “En, novus exercitus adest!” clamantes, terga vertunt, et fugā salutem petunt.

## SECTION 39.

## THE PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

Ego, *I.*

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>
Nom.	Ēgo, <i>I.</i>	Nōs, <i>we.</i>
Acc.	Me, <i>me.</i>	Nos, <i>us.</i>
Gen.	Mei, <i>of me.</i>	Nostri (and) nostrum, <i>of us.</i>
Dat.	Mīhi, <i>to (or) for me.</i>	Nōbis, <i>to (or) for us.</i>
Abl.	Me, <i>by (or) with me.</i>	Nobis, <i>by (or) with us.</i>

Tu, *you*.

	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Nom.	Tu, <i>thou (you).</i>	Vōs, <i>ye (you).</i>
Acc.	Te, <i>thee (you).</i>	Vos, <i>you.</i>
Gen.	Tui, <i>of thee (you).</i>	Vestri (and) vestrum, <i>of you.</i>
Dat.	Tibi, <i>to (or) for thee (you).</i>	Vōbis, <i>to (or) for you.</i>
Abl.	Te, <i>by (or) with thee (you).</i>	Vobis, <i>by (or) with you.</i>

## REFLEXIVE PRONOUN.

*Singular and Plural.*

Nom.	(None).
Acc.	Se, <i>himself, herself, itself, or themselves.</i>
Gen.	Sui, <i>of</i> "
Dat.	Sibi, <i>to (or) for</i> "
Abl.	Se, <i>by</i> "

[97.] 1. Nobis sunt centum libri, vobis librorum duo milia. 2. Vos nunquam nostri immemores eritis, amici carissimi! 3. Mi frater, ubi es?—Adsum. 4. Semper tui memor ero: tu mei semper fuisti memor. 5. Marcus semper se laudat: me semper culpat. 6. Amici immemores nostri rebus in adversis fuere. 7. Marcus sui nunquam, mei semper, immemor erat. 8. Pauci vestrum<sup>1</sup> amicis rebus in adversis aderant.<sup>2</sup> 9. Ego Romae; vos, amici, Athenis eratis! 10. Mihi quinque, tibi decem, libros magister dat. 11. Puella cotidie se floribus ornat. 12. Frater tuus duobus annis quam tu major est. 13. Nos semper pauperibus adsumus, vos nunquam. 14. Quid vos terret, puellae? ego vobis brevi tempore adero. 15. Orator civibus pauperibus semper adest: bonus vir est, et sui immemor.

[98.] 1. You are never mindful of me, Balbus! 2. *Your* father, boy, gives you very beautiful books! 3. *Our* slaves are dear to us, but *our* friends are dearer. 4. We are boys, you are old men. 5. Your letter, brother, was very welcome to me! 6. The mind is the better part of us. 7. To many of us is the oak known. 8. *Your* son is never praised by you. 9. When will the poet's song be known to you, boy? 10. I have already been often in Rome.

[99.] 1. The girl adorns herself with flowers. 2. Marcus is now building a house for himself. 3. The boys are always mindful of themselves. 4. Julia is praised by you, Cornelia by me. 5. The Germans were better in war than the Gauls. 6. There is not, Quintus, a better poet than you! 7. In the morning the girls adorn themselves, in the evening they read books. 8.

<sup>1</sup> Notice that *nostrum* and *vestrum* are used (and not *nostri*, *vestri*) after *pars* (meaning "some"), *pauci*, *multi*, and such words.

<sup>2</sup> *Adsum* with dative means "to stand by some one," i.e. "to help."

My slaves have always been very faithful to me. 9. I always assist my friends. 10. My brother will always assist me.

## SECTION 40.

PRONOUNS—(*Continued*).Hic, *this*.

	<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
Nom.	Hic	haec	hoc.	Hi	hae	haec.
Acc.	Hunc	hanc	hoc.	Hos	has	haec.
Gen.	Hujus	hujus	hujus.	Horum	harum	horum.
Dat.	Huic	huic	huic.	His	his	his.
Abl.	Hoc	hac	hoc.	His	his	his.

Ille, *that*.

	<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
Nom.	Ille	illā	illud.	Illi	illae	illā.
Acc.	Illum	illam	illud.	Illos	illas	illā.
Gen.	Illius	illius	illius.	Illorum	illarum	illorum.
Dat.	Illi	illi	illi.	Illis	illis	illis.
Abl.	Illo	illā	illo.	Illis	illis	illis.

[100.] 1. Hic puer dives, ille pauper est. 2. Hic quam ille multo divitior est. 3. Tibi tui, mihi mei, flores pulcherrimi sunt. 4. Hae res certae, illae incertae, erant. 5. Haec avis semper, illa nunquam, in silvis canit. 6. Sapientia divitiis multis partibus<sup>1</sup> melior est. 7. Hujus virtus, illius divitiae ab omnibus laudantur. 8. Multi vestrum semper fuerunt immemores nostri. 9. Marcus et Quintus fratres fuerunt: ille ("the former," *i.e.* Marcus) quam hic paucis annis major fuit. 10. Hic semper ille nunquam, vecti-

<sup>1</sup> Multis partibus, *by many degrees, i.e. a great deal.*



galia tempore pendit. 11. Servus dominum de adventu meo jam certiores facit. 12. Rex anno regni vicesimo quarto maximos et pulcherrimos hortos civibus dat. 13. Dissimillimi sunt duorum puerorum mores: hic fortis est, ille omnia timet. 14. Tibi amici rebus in adversis semper aderunt: amicorum semper memor es. 15. Ubi sunt Marcus et Quintus?—Hic in horto, ille in silva est.

[101.] 1. I am known to this woman. 2. These woods are very large. 3. He praises these flowers. 4. This house was mine. 5. They give money to these women. 6. That conversation was witty. 7. He gives a book to that boy. 8. Those rooms were very small. 9. The wind drives these ships. 10. I shall never help that man.

[102.] 1. These old men *are* rich, those are poor. 2. They do not praise the speech of that orator. 3. That orator will help these men. 4. This master often assists that boy. 5. The manners of that man are very bad. 6. This *man's* songs, that *man's* orations are praised. 7. Those spurs were very sharp. 8. This man has seven, that eight, horses. 9. Birds very often sing in those woods. 10. This wood is eighteen miles from the city.

## SECTION 41.

### PRONOUNS—(Continued).

*Is, that, or he, she, it.*

	<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
Nom.	Is	eā	id.	Ii	eae	eā.
Acc.	Eum	eam	id.	Eos	eas	eā.
Gen.	Ejus	ejus	ejus.	Eorum	earum	eorum.
Dat.	Ei	ei	ei. ✓	<i>Iis and eis.</i>		
Abl.	Eo	eā	eo.			

*Idem, the same.*

*Singular.*

	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
Nom.	Īdem	eādem	īdem.
Acc.	Eundem	eandem	īdem.
Gen.	Ejusdem	ejusdem	ejusdem.
Dat.	Eidem	eidem	eidem.
Abl.	Eodem	eādem	eodem.

*Plural.*

	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
Nom.	Īdem	eaedem	eādem.
Acc.	Eosdem	easdem	eādem.
Gen.	Eorundem	earundem	eorundem.
Dat. & Abl.		Isdem.	

[103.] 1. Quintus amat laudat-que sorores suas. 2. Cornelia ejus-que<sup>1</sup> frater saepe domum meam veniunt. 3. Caesar in fines hostium venit, eorumque agros vastat. 4. Marcus magnam sibi domum aedificat, eamque omnibus rebus ornat (furnishes). 5. Dominus servos suos ad urbem vespere mittit. 6. Galli ad Caesarem legatos mittunt, faciuntque eum de suis rebus certiore. 7. Mors omnibus hominibus eadem est. 8. Hi duo pueri eorundem morum esse a magistro dicuntur. 9. Marcus et Quintus semper eadem laudant, eadem culpant. 10. Hic senex sapientissimus est, et idem<sup>2</sup> divitissimus. 11. Quid fido amico, eodemque sapientissimo, dulcius est? 12. Hic orator suas orationes semper laudat, Ciceronis idem culpant. 13. Caesar vespere omnibus copiis flumen transit: ea res non erat nota hostibus. 14. Legati ad castra veniunt: milites de adventu eorum Caesarem certiore faciunt. 15. Caesar in fines hostium venit, eosque primo impetu superat.

<sup>1</sup> Literally, "and the brother of her," *i.e.* "and her brother."

<sup>2</sup> *Idem*, lit. "the same man," *i.e.* "and also." In sentence 12 *idem* means "and yet."

[104.] 1. Where are my letters?—The slaves have them. 2. This bird always sings the same song. 3. The master praises the boy, and gives a beautiful book to him. 4. These orators are always praising themselves and their own orations. 5. Caesar sends the soldiers to the camp. 6. Young men and old men do not praise the same things. 7. These *things* are dear to you, those to me. 8. Marcus loves *his* friends, and always assists them. 9. Our army crosses the river: the enemy's army does the same. 10. At that (*is*) time (*abl.*) the Roman name was not known to the Gauls. 11. At the same time the soldiers inform Caesar. 12. The enemy's ambassadors come to Caesar at the same time.

## SECTION 42.

PRONOUNS—(*Continued*).Ipse, *self*.

	<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
Nom.	Ipse	ipsă	ipsum.	Ipsi	ipsae	ipsă.
Acc.	Ipsū	ipsam	ipsum.	Ipsos	ipsas	ipsă.
Gen.	Ipsius	ipsius	ipsius.	Ipsorum	ipsarum	ipsorū.
Dat.	Ipsi	ipsi	ipsi.		Ipsis.	
Abl.	Ipsō	ipsā	ipso.			

Iste, *that of yours*.

	<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
Nom.	Iste	istă	istud.	Isti	istae	istă.
Acc.	Istum	istam	istud.	Istos	istas	istă.
Gen.	Istius	istius	istius.	Istorum	istarum	istorum.
Dat.	Isti	isti	isti.		Istis.	
Abl.	Isto	istă	isto.			

*Ipse* is an adjective ; *se* (p. 63) is a noun :—

a. *Ipsa soror me laudat. My sister herself praises me.*

b. *Soror se laudat. My sister praises herself.*

[c. *Ipse librum legit. He is reading the book himself.*  
*Se* has no nominative.]

[105.] 1. *Ipse dux se nunquam, milites suos semper, laudat.* 2. *Marcus, optimus vir, fratribus pecuniam saepe dat ; ipse paucis rebus contentus est.* 3. *Maxima pars nostrum tres dies duasque noctes in silvis erat.* 4. *Neque ego pauperrimus sum, neque ipse tu divitissimus es.* 5. *Ubi sunt isti servi, mi frater ? domi nunquam sunt.* 6. *Caesar legatos ad castra hostium eodem tempore mittit.* 7. *Ista oratio, Quinte, reipublicae non fuit utilissima !* 8. *Illa puella neque hunc neque illum librum legit.* 9. *Ille juvenis neque mihi, amico suo, neque ipsi fratri adest.* 10. *Balbus neque maximus neque minimus natu amicorum est.* 11. *Neque ipse venit, neque nos de suis rebus certiores facit.* 12. *Hī libri mei sunt, Balbe.—Quid ! illi libri tui sunt ! Mei, non tui, sunt.*

[106.] 1. *The queen herself decorates the table with flowers every day.* 2. *Marcus himself is at home ; Quintus, his brother, is in the city.* 3. *Those manners of yours, boy, will be welcome neither to your father nor your mother !* 4. *This poet often praises his own poems.* 5. *That song of yours, Balbus, is the worst of all !* 6. *The ambassadors inform the king himself of their arrival.* 7. *The ambassadors themselves sometimes come to our camp.* 8. *The slaves come in the morning : in the evening he sends them to the city.* 9. *You never assist those friends of yours.* 10. *Neither this man, nor that, is my friend.*

## SECTION 43.

## PRONOUNS—(Continued).

**Totus, the whole.**

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
Nom. Totus	totă	totum.	Toti	totae	totă.
Acc. Totum	totam	totum.	Totos	totas	totă.
Gen. Totius	totius	totius.	Totorum	totarum	totorum.
Dat. Toti	toti	toti.		Totis.	
Abl. Toto	totă	toto.			

*Solus, unus, and nullus* are declined like *totus*.

**Alius, other.**

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
Nom. Alius	aliă	aliud.	Alii	aliae	aliă.
Acc. Alium	aliam	aliud.	Alios	alias	aliă.
Gen. Alius	alius	alius.	Aliorum	aliarum	aliorum.
Dat. Alii	alii	alii.		Aliis.	
Abl. Alio	aliă	alio.			

When *alius* is repeated in the sentence, the first *alius* means "some," and the second "other." So *Alii regem, alii reginam, culpant* means "some blame the king, others the queen."

[107.] 1. Sex menses totos milites in castris erant. 2. Aliud pueris, aliud senibus gratum est. 3. Non me solum, sed ipsum etiam se, culpât. 4. Alii patri, alii matri suae, simillimi sunt. 5. Solum unum hoc culpât magister. 6. Alia de causa Marcum, alia Quintum, culpât. 7. Nobis neque naves erant aliae, neque milites alii. 8. Nullius carmina quam tua pulchriora sunt. 9. Legionem octavam totam hiemem in castris habet. 10.



Totius anni vectigalia maxima erunt. 11. Ista verba neque patri neque magistro grata erunt. 12. Non magistro solum, sed etiam patri, isti mores molesti sunt. 13. Solus hic neque regem neque ipsam reginam timet. 14. His de causis non civibus solum, sed etiam militibus, rex carus est.

[108.] 1. Quintus has only one brother. 2. I alone assisted that boy. 3. The songs of no poet are better than yours. 4. *In* the whole of Italy the cold had been very great. 5. This *man* often praises himself, others never. 6. Marcus and other boys frighten their sister by *their* shouts. 7. Books alone delight that old man. 8. Neither in winter nor in summer shall I be away from home. 9. Some come to the harbour, others remain in the city. 10. Not to me only, but to all the citizens, is the king dear. 11. Some praise this thing, others that. 12. The charge of the whole army frightens the enemy. 13. Some come to the camp, others Caesar sends to the river. 14. The name of one poet only is known to the boy. 15. The boy is already fourteen years old.

## SECTION 44.

PRONOUNS—(*Continued*).

*Uter, which (of two).*

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
N. Uter	utră	utrum.	Utri	utrae	utră.
Ac. Utrum	utram	utrum.	Utros	utras	utră.
G. Utrius	utrius	utrius.	Utrorum	utrarum	utrorum.
D. Utri	utri	utri.	Utris.		
Ab. Utro.	utră	utro.			

**Alter, the other (of two).**

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
N. Alter	altĕră	alterum.	Alteri	alterae	alteră.
A. Alterum	alteram	alterum.	Alteros	alteras	alteră.
G. Alterius	alterius	alterius.	Alterorum	alterarum	alterorum.
D. Alteri	alteri	alteri.		Alteris.	
A. Altero	alteră	altero.			

*Alius, another (other).*

*Alter, the other (of two).*

*Cetĕri, the others, the rest.*

[109.] 1. Rex Agesilaus altero pede claudus erat. 2. Alteram ex duabus legionibus Caesar ad castra mittit. 3. Marcus et Quintus domum redeunt; ceteri pueri in urbe manent. 4. Auxilium magistri pigro puero gratissimum est. 5. Illi pueri quam ceteri natu majores sunt. 6. Quintus, vir optimus, omnia alterius causa facit. 7. Caesar virtutem totius legionis laudat. 8. Virtus regis non uni solum legioni sed toti etiam exercitui nota est. 9. His de causis alterum puerum laudat, alterum culpat. 10. Utri puerorum major est diligentia? 11. Pigerrimus ille puer saepissime a magistro auxilium petit. 12. Alii saepe auxilium petunt, alii ipsi omnia faciunt. 13. Utra sororum pulchrior est?—Julia quam Cornelia multo pulchrior esse dicitur. 14. Balbus saepissime domum meam venit: is filius alter Marci, mei amici carissimi, est.

[110.] 1. The old man is deaf in one ear. 2. To which of the two boys does he give a reward? 3. Some are present, others are absent. 4. One is present, the other is absent. 5. Marcus is present, the rest are absent. 6. I have two brothers; the one is older, the other younger than I. 7. Which of the *two* legions is said to be the braver? 8. Some boys always *ask for*

*help*, others never ask for help. 9. The courage of the soldiers is very great. 10. The courage of our soldiers is greater than *that* of the enemy. 11. Neither *my* brother nor *my* sister is older than you. 12. Neither Balbus nor Marcus is away from home in the winter. 13. The king himself is a very brave soldier. 14. One of the sons is very like (to) his father, the other is very unlike. 15. Of the two boys the one is twelve, the other thirteen years old.

## SECTION 45.

## THE PRONOUNS—(Continued).

*The Relative Pronoun.**Singular.*

	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	
Nom.	Qui	quae	quod	<i>who, which.</i>
Acc.	Quem	quam	quod	<i>whom, which.</i>
Gen.	Cujus	cujus	cujus	<i>whose, of which.</i>
Dat.	Cui	cui	cui	<i>to whom, to which.</i>
Abl.	Quo	quā	quo	<i>by whom, by which.</i>

*Plural.*

	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	
Nom.	Qui	quae	quae	<i>who, which.</i>
Acc.	Quos	quas	quae	<i>who, which.</i>
Gen.	Quorum	quarum	quorum	<i>whose, of which.</i>
Dat. & Abl.		Quibus		<i>to whom, to which.</i>

[111.] 1. Fluctus, qui navem in portum agunt, maximi sunt. 2. Puer, cujus pater dux erat, ipse dux erit. 3. Orator eos laudat, a quibus ipse laudatur. 4. Hic est puer ille, cui magister maximum praemium dat. 5. Alii virtutem, alii sapientiam, oratoris laudant. 6.

Sapiens non eos laudat, quibus pecunia quam sapientia carior fuit. 7. Dux hostium totum exercitum ad mare ducit. 8. Caesar mane duas legiones equitesque omnes castris educit. 9. Vespere idem copias ad castra reducit. 10. Ducem, quem multis verbis laudat orator, ceteri cives culpant. 11. Hi pueri, quos magistri semper culpant, tristissimi sunt. 12. Non eum sapientes laudant, cujus divitiae magnae sunt, sed qui suis rebus contentus est. 13. Caesar milites, quos mane castris educit, vespere ad castra reducit. 14. Quis huic puero aderit, qui nihil alterius causa facit?

[112.] 1. The old man, who was already deaf, is now lame. 2. The slaves, who go out in the morning, return in the evening. 3. The girl, who helps her mother, is praised by all. 4. This is the poet, whose works all *men* are reading. 5. This is the merchant, to whom the leader gives money. 6. To which *of the two* does he give the better books? 7. Caesar leads the soldiers to the camp. 8. The leader leads out the cavalry *from* the camp. 9. The king leads back two legions to the camp. 10. All men love those *men* by whom they are loved. 11. Of the leaders the one *is* the wiser, the other is the braver. 12. The poet, whom all men praise, is not always the best. 13. The slaves, whom their master blames, are very faithful. 14. Wisdom is much better than riches. 15. Those (*is*) are not always the best soldiers, whose words are the bravest.

#### XVII. Ulysses in Polyphemus's Cave.—I.

Graeci post excidium Trojae in patriam revertunt. In his erat Ulixes. Multum ille errat, multas terras videt, multa maria transit. Primo anno cum duodecim comitibus in Siciliam insulam venit. Siciliam autem illo tempore non homines, sed feri gigantes, habitabant.

Cyclōpes eorum nomen erat. Haec res Ulixi non nota est. Ulixes igitur et comites ejus ad specum Polyphēmi veniunt. Is ferocissimus omnium Cyclopum est, idemque ceteris corpore ingentior: unum modo oculum in media fronte habet. In specu, igitur, Graeci lac et caseos laeti inveniunt. Ipse autem non adest, sed oves in montibus pascit. Brevi tempore ipse Polyphemus ad specum cum ovibus revertit. Primum maximo atque gravissimo saxo januam specus claudit. Deinde oves mulget, et lignis ignem facit. Tum demum Ulixem duodecimque ejus comites conspicit.

(Continued on p. 81.)

### Recapitulatory Exercises.

E. 1. Hic filium, ille servum, ad urbem mittit. 2. Rex mercatorem laudat, eique magnam reginae imaginem dat. 3. Quintus tibi notus est: is omnium amicorum mihi longe carissimus est. 4. Ubi est illa domus, quam tuus pater in hac urbe aedificat? 5. Legati, quos hostes mittunt, jam in castris sunt. 6. Magister pueros laudat, eisque libros dat. 7. Regi et reginae eadem virtus eadem sapientia fuit. 8. Hi pueri se pessimis amicis semper circumdant. 9. Rex ad castra hostium copias ducit, agrosque eorum vastat. 10. Uter fratrum major est?—Alexander non solum natu major, sed multo etiam sapientior, est.

F. 1. The king himself informs me of these matters. 2. This legion has three thousand soldiers. 3. The best part of us is not the body, but the mind. 4. The ambassadors were three miles from the camp. 5. The works of Cicero are neither very difficult nor very easy. 6. Girls and boys are often not pleased by the same things. 7. I am to-day twenty-one years old. 8. The courage of the seventh legion is often praised by Caesar.



9. I am older than you by two whole years. 10. Many thousands of birds sing in these woods in summer.

G. 1. Dux se multa oratione laudat; milites suos idem culpat. 2. Rex legatos de suis rebus certiores facit, eosque ad castra mittit. 3. Ubi sunt illae aves, quae in conclavi tuo semper canunt? 4. Hic puer, quem magister hodie culpat, semper a matre laudatur. 5. Hi milites, quibus vita quam victoria carior est, domi manent; ceteri educuntur. 6. Alii in equites, alii in pedestres copias, acrem impetum faciunt. 7. Florum alii aliis colores multo pulchriores sunt. 8. Alii servos suos mittunt, alii neque ipsi veniunt neque nos certiores faciunt. 9. Magnus quercuum, quae in hortis nostris sunt, numerus media aestate gratissimus est. 10. Huic puero neque pater neque mater pecuniam dat; illi pater non pecuniam solum sed multas alias res interdum dat.

H. 1. There are a thousand horsemen in that wing of the army. 2. In summer the days, in winter the nights, are the longer. 3. To few men is wisdom dear, but all love riches. 4. These soldiers have no hope of victory; they are frightened by the enemy. 5. Nobody's horses were swifter than mine. 6. This oak is very welcome to us all in summer. 7. The courage of these *men*, the wisdom of those, is praised by all. 8. Those birds make their little homes on the tops of the oaks. 9. Of all his friends Quintus was by far the dearest to the king. 10. The master blames not you and me only, but all the other boys also.

I. 1. Nothing was more pleasant to me in my trouble than this letter of my mother's. 2. That boy's manners are said to be very bad by all the masters. 3. These boys, who go out from home in the morning, always come back home in the evening. 4. These two men are very rich, the rest are very poor. 5. Of the *two* brothers

the one will be very like his father (dat.), the other very like his mother. 6. The girl, whose brother is known to you, is said to be very pretty. 7. Where are my brother's books, which were in your room? He has not *any* others. 8. To this slave, who has been very faithful, his master often gives a reward. 9. The characters of the boys are very unlike; this *one* is always, that *one* never, satisfied. 10. The life of many animals is longer than *that* of men. 11. He has two sisters: the one is in Rome, the other is at home. 12. This ship, which is now in harbour, is by far the fastest of all.

## SECTION 46.

## VERBS: FIRST CONJUGATION.

ACTIVE VOICE: INDICATIVE MOOD.—*Present Tense.*

**Amāre, to love.***Singular.**Plural.*1. Amo, *I love.*1. Amāmus, *we love.*2. Amas, *you love.*2. Amātis, *you love.*3. Amat, *he loves.*3. Amant, *they love.*

To this conjugation belong all the verbs with the endings *-at* and *-ant*. Those already in use are:—

aedificare

delectare

ornare.

circumdare<sup>1</sup>

incitare

superare

culpare

laudare

vastare.

dare<sup>1</sup>

Nonne me amas? *Do you not love me?*

Num me amas? *You do not love me, do you?*

<sup>1</sup> These two verbs form their perfects differently from *amare*.

[113.] 1. Cotidie, Balbe, pauperibus pecuniam do. Num me culpas? 2. Quid! num tu me, veterrimum amicum, culpas? 3. Semper pueros ad maiorem diligentiam incitamus. 4. Nonne nos, qui vobis semper fidissimi fuimus, laudatis? 5. Ego patris epistulas exspecto: quid tu, Balbe, exspectas? 6. Quid! num vos, milites, adventum hostium exspectatis? 7. Non eum laudo, cui maximae divitiae sunt, sed qui sapientissimus est. 8. Uni ex omnibus Sequāni nihil earum rerum faciunt, quas ceteri faciunt.

[114.] 1. I blame not you only, but your brother also. 2. We all love *our* brothers and sisters. 3. You are not, are you, Quintus, expecting a letter? 4. Boys, do you not love *your* fathers and mothers? 5. You do not blame me, do you?—I neither blame nor praise you. 6. I do not blame you, my friends; I blame you, Marcus! 7. You are not, are you, soldiers, building this ship? 8. Are you not expecting Caesar's arrival, soldiers? 9. What! do you not praise me?—I do not praise you. 10. Marcus blames not himself, but his friends.

## SECTION 47.

VERBS: FIRST CONJUGATION—(*Continued*).

ACTIVE VOICE: INDICATIVE MOOD.

*Future and Imperfect Tenses.*

Future: Amabo, *I shall love.*

Imperfect: Amabam, *I was loving.*

For the complete tenses, see p. 110.

[115.] 1. Tibi dabo duos pulcherrimos libros.—Quid tu mihi dabis? 2. Milites nostri non has solum, sed

majores etiam copias, aliquando fugabunt. 3. Nihil aliud quam<sup>1</sup> animos civium ad bellum incitabas. 4. Nonne, milites, hostes superabitis?—Nihil aliud quam hostes fugamus. 5. Onus, quod servus in capite portabat, gravissimum erat. 6. Num tu laudabis hominem, cujus pessimi mores omnibus noti sunt? 7. Laudabo non puerum solum, sed patrem etiam magistrosque. 8. Dux hostium urbem nostram altissimo aggere circumdabat. 9. Magister me heri laudabat, hodie culpat, cras laudabit. 10. Nonne te verba magistri aliquando ad majorem diligentiam incitabunt? 11. Caesar equites omnes in dextro cornu collocabat. 12. Hoc gravissimum onus portabam, neque<sup>2</sup> fessus eram.

[116.] 1. The ships were carrying three thousand soldiers. 2. The soldiers will put to flight the forces of the enemy. 3. I love you, my dearest mother, and shall always love you. 4. Where are those slaves who were carrying this burden? 5. I will give you a large sum of money some day. 6. This slave will some day be a master himself. 7. He will place part of the cavalry on the right wing. 8. I shall never carry a heavier burden. 9. Will you not give (to) me my books? 10. Caesar was placing the seventh legion on the left wing. 11. You will not, will you, expect a letter every day? 12. Your courage will urge on the rest, soldiers! 13. Neither was I praising you yesterday, nor shall I praise you to-day. 14. The king leads out a part of his forces in the summer. 15. You, soldiers, will overcome and put to flight the enemy!

<sup>1</sup> You *were doing* nothing but, etc.

<sup>2</sup> And yet I was not.

## SECTION 48.

FIRST CONJUGATION—(*Continued*).*Perfect, Future Perfect, and Pluperfect Tenses.*

Perfect :            *Amāvi, I have loved, or I loved.*

Future Perfect : *Amavĕro, I shall have loved.*

Pluperfect :        *Amavĕram, I had loved.*

[117.] 1. Nemo nos exspectavit ; omnes nostri immemores fuistis. 2. Nonne haec gravissima onera portavimus ? 3. Nonne milites nostri fortiter pugnaverunt ? 4. Rex et regina paucos solum annos regnare. 5. Nonne ingentem navium numerum aedificaveritis ? 6. Equites quattuor totas horas fortissime pugnaverant. 7. Nemo quam tu fortius pugnaverit, Quinte ! 8. Brevi tempore tres naves longas aedificaverimus. 9. Puerum neque ego culpavi, neque tu laudavisti. 10. Eos laudabo, qui fortissime pugnaverint. 11. Milites nostri summa virtute pugnaverant. 12. Hostes legiones octavam et nonam fugaverunt.

[118.] 1. I have fought bravely, but nobody praises me. 2. With one charge they had put the enemy to flight. 3. The slaves have furnished the house with all things. 4. No one will have fought more bravely. 5. The queen had already reigned two years (acc.) 6. Your letter, Alexander, will have delighted your father. 7. We have built five war-ships. 8. Your help will some day be very welcome to your mother. 9. The father was very often giving money to his son. 10. The leader has posted some *men* on the left, others on the right wing. 11. You have carried very bravely a very heavy burden. 12. They had overcome the left wing of the army. 13. You will have incited the boy to greater diligence. 14. The king has reigned twenty years. 15. Our *men* will have laid waste the enemy's lands.



## SECTION 49.

VERBS : FIRST CONJUGATION—(*Continued*).

THE PRESENT INFINITIVE : PARTS OF THE IMPERATIVE.

*Amāre, to love.**Amā, love thou, love* (speaking to one person).*Amāte, love ye, love* (speaking to more than one person).

[119.] 1. Quis potest istos mores, puer, laudare ? Nemo potest. 2. Servi hoc gravissimum onus manibus portare non possunt. 3. Ama fratres, Quinte ! Quid dulcius esse potest, quam fratres amare ? 4. Ornate, puellae, mensam floribus !—Nihil aliud quam mensam ornamus. 5. Dux equites agros hostium vastare jubet. 6. Caesar decimam legionem adventum suum expectare jubet. 7. Pugnate fortissime, milites ! Hostes iam adsunt. 8. Fugate equites, milites !—Nihil difficilius esse potest quam hos fugare equites.

[120.] 1. Nobody is able to carry all the books. 2. Fight bravely, soldiers ! The leader will praise you. 3. He orders the cavalry to urge on their horses. 4. The ambassadors come to Caesar and ask for help. 5. They have fought more bravely to-day than yesterday. 6. Nobody can blame the king and queen. 7. He orders me to give *him* wine. 8. Give (to) me Cicero's speeches, boy ! 9. They order the slaves to carry the burden to the city. 10. They are not able to put the enemy to flight.

XVIII. Ulysses in Polyphemus's Cave.—II.

[*Translate again No. XVII., p. 74, before doing this.*]

Polyphemus statim Ulixem comitesque ejus interrogat, "Estis mercatores an praedones ?" Gravis vox Cyclopis

omnes magnopere terret. Respondet Ulixes "Graeci sumus: tempestas nos a cursu nostro in istam insulam dejecit. Nonne tu, qui magnus homo es et validissimus, nos, hospites tuos, ut mos est Graecorum, benigne tractabis? gratissimi in te erimus. Si tamen in nos crudelis fueris, dei, quibus hospites curae sunt, crudelitatem tuam vindicabunt." Sed Polyphemus, ridens, "Dei vestri," inquit, "me non terrent; ego enim et robustior et potentior multo sum, quam illi." Tum duos comites Ulixis magna vi in saxum jacet. Postquam membra eorum laceravit, cenam sibi parat; carnem et ossa humana devorat. "Quam me delectat," exclamat, "horum Graeculorum caro! undecim supersunt: multos dies praeclarissime cenabo." Audiunt Graeci; gelidus sudor per membra manat.

## SECTION 50.

### VERBS: SECOND CONJUGATION.

#### **Mōnērē**, *to advise.*

#### *Present, Future, and Imperfect Tenses.*

Present: Moneo, *I advise.*

Future: Monēbo, *I shall advise.*

Imperfect: Monēbam, *I was advising.*

To this conjugation belong the verbs already used with endings *-et* and *-ent*. These are: Habeo, jubeo, maneo, terreo, timeo, video.

[121.] 1. Ego mare timeo; te neque fluctus neque venti terrent. 2. Timebant eos, qui saepe exercitus suos superaverunt. 3. Hi homines multam pecuniam illi mercatori debebant. 4. Nostri milites fortissime pugnare debent. 5. Num nos naves aedificare jubetis?

Jam fessi sumus. 6. Res adversae animum fortis illius viri non terrebunt. 7. Amicus meus tres annos totos Romae manebit. 8. Pueri saepe clamoribus has parvas puellas terrebant. 9. Nonne vides hos servos, qui naves aedificant? 10. Brevi tempore, milites, non equites solum sed totum etiam exercitum superaveritis!

[122.] 1. Do you not see, my friends, the enemy's ships in the harbour? 2. Yesterday *they* were remaining at home; to-morrow they will not remain. 3. I often see your slaves in the city. 4. You ought to await *your* father's arrival. 5. The king was owing a large sum of money to the merchant. 6. You do not fear the enemy's shouts, soldiers, do you? 7. Caesar's arrival will frighten the king of the enemy. 8. They have fought very bravely, nor did they fear the enemy. 9. They were ordering the slaves to decorate the table. 10. Do you not see the soldiers, who are building the ships? 11. This war will delight the soldiers, *it* will frighten the citizens. 12. You will not, will you, fear the enemy, soldiers? Have you not often overcome them?

## SECTION 51.

VERBS: SECOND CONJUGATION—(*Continued*).

*Perfect, Future Perfect, and Pluperfect Tenses.*

Perfect: Monui, *I have advised, I advised.*

Future Perfect: Monuëro, *I shall have advised.*

Pluperfect: Monuëram, *I had advised.*

Three of the verbs of this conjugation already in use, jubeo, maneo, and video, do not form their perfects, and therefore their future perfects and pluperfects, like *moneo*.

[123.] 1. Soror mea optime valuit, ego non valui. 2. Omnes tacuistis, amici: num illum oratorem timuistis? 3. Pater tuus hodie melius valere dicitur. 4. Saepe jam monuisti, saepe culpavisti, pueros. 5. Omnes tacebant: nemo oratorem laudabat. 6. Fluctus, quos hae puellae timuerant, illos pueros delectabant. 7. Pueros cotidie in hortis aestate videbam. 8. Illi pueri miseras aves clamoribus terruerint. 9. Magister pueros omnes iterum atque iterum tacere jubebat. 10. Tace,<sup>1</sup> puer: sermone tuo jam fessi sumus. 11. Hi pueri non solum nihil habent, sed multam etiam pecuniam debent. 12. Vale iterum atque iterum, amice carissime! Quando te videbo?

[124.] 1. I am always ordering the boy to be silent. 2. The arrival of the master frightened the slaves. 3. My mother was better yesterday. 4. Those girls feared the waves of the sea. 5. Be silent!—In a short time I will be silent. 6. Good-bye again and again, Quintus! I shall expect a letter. 7. Can he not be silent? I am tired. 8. The words of the ambassadors frightened the citizens. 9. The king will have feared the words of the soldiers. 10. You will see the rest *of them* every day. 11. It is time to be silent: we are all tired. 12. The shouts of the enemy had frightened neither leader nor soldiers. 13. You have never praised me.—You have never been silent. 14. I have warned the boy again and again: he cannot hold his tongue. 15. Good-bye, my brother, I shall see you again *in* a short time.

### XIX. Ulysses in Polyphemus's Cave.—III.

Idem facit saevus ille Polyphemus postero die, et post cenam specu excedit, et pecora in montibus pascit;

<sup>1</sup> Imperative, see p. 112.

sed prius saxo, ut antea, ingenti januam specus claudit. Tum Ulixes comitesque ejus deliberabant, "Quomodo nos ab hoc crudelissimo monstro liberabimus? Nonne omnes lacerabit, omnes devorabit?" Tandem Ulixes callidissimum consilium comitibus aperit, quod omnes laeti probabant. Vespere, ut mos ejus erat, Cyclops in specum revertit. Tum Ulixes poculum vino, quod secum portaverat, implet, et Polyphemo dat. "Bibe," inquit, "mi Polypheme carissime; hoc vinum optimum est." Bibit Polyphemus. "Verum est quod dicis, hoc vinum optimum est. Da mihi, oro te, amice, alterum poculum vini! Sed quid tibi nomen est, parve homo?" Tum Ulixes, postquam poculum iterum implevit, "O Polypheme," inquit, "rarum nomen mihi est, Nemo nomen est." "Mi carissime Nemo," respondet ridens Polyphemus, "optimum vinum mihi das, ego tibi hoc praeonium dabo; te postremum omnium ad cenam mihi parabo."

## SECTION 52.

## VERBS: THIRD CONJUGATION—INDICATIVE MOOD.

*Present, Future, and Imperfect Tenses.*

*Rĕgĕrĕ, to rule.*

Present: Rĕgo, *I rule.*

Future: Regam, *I shall rule.*

Imperfect: Regĕbam, *I was ruling.*

To this conjugation belong the following verbs, which have already been used:—

1. Ago, cano, duco (educō, reduco), lego, mitto, pendo, peto.
2. Facio.



[125.] 1. Alii multa dicent, alii tacebunt. 2. Num tu semper hanc urbem incoles? 3. Rex cives vectigalia pendere jubebat. 4. Puer opera Ciceronis legere debet. 5. Libros, quos semper in manibus habes, legis nunquam. 6. Nemo verba senum illorum sapientium contemnere debet. 7. Tibi, puella, quos habeo pulcherrimos flores dabo! 8. Hostes tela omnis generis in equites nostros jaciebant. 9. Hostes semper tela in nostros jaciunt, neque multos interficiunt. 10. Quintus fratrem cotidie de omnibus rebus certiore faciet. 11. Caesar partem equitum in monte collocabit, partem ad flumen mittet. 12. Nonne aliquando hunc librum leges? te delectabit.

[126.] 1. The waves will drive the ships on to the shore. 2. The enemy will not kill many with their darts. 3. Many birds will be singing in our gardens in summer. 4. Soldiers, you will throw your darts in vain! 5. When will you be silent? your conversation is not welcome. 6. What were they saying to you?—They said nothing. 7. We inhabit a very famous and very beautiful city. 8. You ought not to despise your brother's words. 9. The darts of the enemy were very sharp. 10. You are very well, are you not?—I am very well. 11. Our men were killing two thousand of the enemy. 12. Caesar was leading out all the cavalry from the camp. 13. I shall read the book again to-morrow. 14. Will you send your slave to (*ad*) me some day? 15. Good-bye, brother; good-bye, sisters! the ship is now in harbour.

## SECTION 53.

VERBS: THIRD CONJUGATION—(*Continued*).

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

*Perfect, Future Perfect, and Pluperfect Tenses.*

Perfect :	Rexi, <i>I have ruled, I ruled.</i>
Future Perfect :	Rexĕro, <i>I shall have ruled.</i>
Pluperfect :	Rexĕram, <i>I had ruled.</i>

By no means all the verbs of this conjugation form their perfects (and consequently the future perfect and pluperfect) like *rego*. Some of these appear in the following exercise in *italics*, but only regular perfects are introduced into the English into Latin exercises.

[127.] 1. Ille senex octoginta sex annos jam vixit. 2. Illi nautae navem suam optime rexerint. 3. Hostes gravissima tela in nostros *jecerunt*. 4. Regem de Caesaris legionumque adventu certiores statim *fecerunt*. 5. Caesar milites majores, quam jam *fecerant*, naves statim aedificare jubebat. 6. Nostri omnes, qui illam urbem incolebant, homines *interfecerunt*. 7. Quid utilius esse potest quam bonos libros legere? 8. Non a me, sed a fratre tuo, Quinte, auxilium pete! 9. Contemnite divitias, cives; sapientiam amate! 10. Quid tristius esse potest quam nunquam valere? 11. Prorae ingentes nostrarum navium hostes terruerunt. 12. Frater tuus te valere jubet; pater eum exspectat. 13. Pende quam mihi debes pecuniam!—Neque debeo neque pendam. 14. Multis pueris tacere res difficillima esse dicitur. 15. Quid regi dixisti?—Eadem, quae jam tibi, dixi. 16. Non a te, sed ab amicis meis, auxilium petam. 17. Non Quinto solum sed omnibus etiam amicis pecu-

niam debuisti. 18. Illi oratores iterum atque iterum eadem dixere. 19. Hic rex cives optime rexit, fuitque omnibus carissimus. 20. Nonne mox tacebis, orator?—Non jam (*yet*) omnia quae debui dixi.

[128.] 1. My friend lived thirty-three years (*acc.*) 2. Caesar had led out three legions at once *from* the camp. 3. What did you say to your brother?—I said only a few words. 4. The sailor steered (*rego*) the ship with one hand. 5. The sailors had steered the ships very well. 6. You ought not to ask for help. 7. They cannot inhabit the same city always. 8. You will soon read Caesar's works. 9. The slaves were killing their master. 10. The sailors will soon throw the flowers into the sea. 11. The king led his forces at once to the river. 12. What, my friends, did you say to that merchant? 13. Caesar will have led the army back to-morrow. 14. The king will have lived fifty years to-morrow. 15. Despise the words and the shouts of the enemy, sailors!

#### XX. Ulysses in Polyphemus's Cave.—IV.

Polyphemum, qui non unum et alterum solum sed plurima etiam pocula vini biberat, altus somnus opprimit. Ulixes autem jam antea palum, quem in specu invenerat, acuerat, et candentem fecerat. Hunc candentem palum in unum oculum Polyphemi intrusit, et ita Cyclopem excaecavit. Is, postquam dolorem sensit, omnium Cycloperum auxilium imploravit. Cyclopes igitur ad specum venerunt, et interrogaverunt, "Quis te, O Polypheme, necare cupit?" Respondet ille, "Nemo me necare cupit, amici." Exclamant Cyclopes, "Cur auxilium nostrum imploravisti, si nemo te necare cupit!" Tum domum reverterunt. Polyphemus autem frustra Graecos toto specu capere cupivit; semper ex manibus ejus se eripiunt.

“Ubi estis, amici?” exclamat. Graeci callide tacebant. Postero die more suo Cyclops saxum, quod januam claudebat, amovet, et oves emittit. Ulixes autem comites suos sub alvis ovium reliquerat; ipse se manibus sub alvo arietis tenebat. Ita omnes feliciter carcere excedunt.

## SECTION 54.

## VERBS: FOURTH CONJUGATION—INDICATIVE MOOD.

*Present, Future, and Imperfect Tenses.*

*Audire, to hear.*

Present: Audio, *I hear.*

Future: Audiam, *I shall hear.*

Imperfect: Audiēbam, *I was hearing.*

[129]. 1. Hi miseri pueri dormire non possunt. 2. Veni solus! ceteros videre non cupio. 3. Vestras epistulas, amici, neque potest legere neque cupiet! 4. Num semper tuam, Balbe, vocem audiam? Nunquam tacebis? 5. Multa hodie scio, quae heri nesciebam. 6. Quando fratres vestri, Balbe et Quinte, domum venient? —Nescimus. 7. Caesar copias omnes ad flumen statim convenire jubet. 8. Legiones tres in armis sunt, duae ad castra redeunt. 9. Milites decimae legionis mox ad auxilium convenient. 10. Nunquam cum majoribus hostium copiis pugnauerunt nostri. 11. Caesar milites, quorum magnum numerum habebat, ex omnibus portibus convenire jubet. 12. Scio: omnia ex amico audiebam; semper me de his rebus omnibus certiore facit.

[130.] 1. The leader hears the soldiers' shouts. 2. He will not hear your words: he is deaf in that ear. 3. Where will your brothers be to-morrow, friends?—

We don't know. 4. What do you hear from (*ex*, with abl.) Balbus about these affairs? 5. Caesar orders the soldiers to come together at once. 6. Your brothers cannot come to you every day. 7. Our soldiers will send no dart in vain. 8. You will not, will you, sleep the whole day (*acc.*)? 9. Boys, the master desires to see your books! 10. The king himself was coming to (*ad*) the city. 11. When will you come?—I do not know. 12. To-day I know, yesterday I did not know. 13. They wish to sleep, but they are not able. 14. Where are the slaves?—They will come soon. 15. When will you be silent?—Do you not wish to hear us?

## SECTION 55.

### VERBS: FOURTH CONJUGATION.

*Perfect, Future Perfect, and Pluperfect Tenses.*

Perfect :            Audīvi, *I have heard, I heard.*

Future Perfect : Audivēro, *I shall have heard.*

Pluperfect :      Audivēram, *I had heard.*

1. Audivisti-ne omnia?      *Have you heard everything?*
2. Nonne omnia audivisti?   *Have you not heard every-  
thing?*
3. Num omnia audivisti?      *You have not heard every-  
thing, have you?*

[131.] 1. Quid! nonne audiui omnia quae pueri vestri dicebant? 2. Non hodie cupis, quae heri cupivisti. 3. Milites jam castra muniverunt; omnes cras in armis erunt. 4. Audiveras-ne ea quae dicebam?—Audiveram. 5. Haec-ne omnia nescivisti?—Nemo me certiore fecit. 6. Hae puellae totum diem dormiverunt.



7. Cupivisti-ne omnes hos, quos habuisti, libros legere?  
 8. Partem orationis omnes audiverunt, partem audivit nemo. 9. Milites, qui heri castra muniebant, hodie omnes in armis erunt. 10. Tempus-ne est dormire? fessus sum.—Tempus est, dormi! 11. Veni, statim, Marce! nonne me audis? 12. Venite, pueri, cotidie ad me cum omnibus vestris libris!

[132.] 1. Some fortified the camp, others were in arms. 2. Have you heard, citizens, the words of your king? 3. Have you not already fortified the camp, soldiers? 4. You have not been asleep all day, Quintus, have you? 5. Come to-morrow, Marcus! I wish to see you. 6. Are you tired, boys? It is time to sleep. 7. Be silent, boys! The master will hear your shouts. 8. Did you wish to come?—*No*, I did not wish. 9. They were ignorant of everything.—Did you tell them (dat.) everything? 10. Quintus will have slept for twelve hours. 11. Will he carry all these things to the city? 12. Will you fear the enemy's charge? 13. Will they tell nothing to their brothers and sisters? 14. Will he hear the songs of the birds? 15. Will you inform Caesar of the enemy's approach?

## XXI. Ulysses in Polyphemus's Cave.—V.

Tum summa celeritate ad litus properaverunt. Navem conscendunt, et a litore solvunt. Ulixes autem magna voce clamavit, "O Polypheme, si amici tui te interrogaverint, 'Quis te excaecavit?' ita te respondere jubebo, 'Ulixes me excaecavit.'" Polyphemus autem, ira infensus, ingens saxum in navem jecit, quod Graecorum navem paene oppressit. Ulixes autem post multos tandem errores feliciter ad patriam venit. Adventus ejus Penelopae uxori et Telemacho filio gratissimus fuit.

## XXII. Gaius Mucius Scaevola.

Dum Etrusci aliquando Romam obsident, Gaius Mucius, adulescens nobilis, consilium audacissimum init. Nam penetrare in hostium castra, et ipsum regem Porsinam interficere, constituit. Ferrum igitur intra vestem abdit, et castra hostium clam intrat. Ingens ibi turba prope regium tribunal adstat; nam forte militibus stipendium datur. Scriba autem cum rege pari fere ornatu sedebat: eum milites vulgo adeunt. Mucius igitur, qui regis faciem ignorabat neque rogare milites audebat, ferrum arripit, et scribam pro rege obtruncat. Tum sibi ipse per trepidam turbam viam facit; sed milites regii juvenem comprehendunt, et ad regem retrahunt. Clamat rex, "Quis te ad hoc facinus adduxit?" et milites statim ignem adferre jubet. Tum Mucius, "Civis Romanus sum, neque ignem timeo," et statim dextram manum in flammam injicit, neque torrentem retrahit. Rex, tanta audacia attonitus, milites juvenem ab flammis amovere jubet. "Te vero, tantae virtutis juvenem, liberum dimitto." Tum Mucius callide, "Quia," inquit, "meam virtutem honoravisti, tibi aperiam quod scire cupiebas. Nos trecenti, principes juventutis Romanae, in mortem tuam conjuravimus. Forte ego eorum primus fui; ceteri, suo quisque tempore, aderunt." Rex, his verbis contreritus, pacem cum Romanis facit, et exercitum reducit.

## Recapitulatory Exercises.

J. 1. Omnes-ne tuos servos ad urbem mittes?—Tres solum mittam, ceteri domi manebunt. 2. Num unus homo hanc totam navem regere potest? 3. Vale, mi frater, saepe mihi de tuis rebus nuntium mitte! 4. Ille sapiens homines divitias contemnere, sapientiam amare, jubet. 5. Nostra tela longissima, vestra, hostes,

brevissima sunt! 6. Nonne pecuniam, quam mercatori debetis, aliquando pendetis? 7. Eos milites, qui fortissime pugnauerant, in sinistro cornu collocabat. 8. Milites tertiae legionis, qui heri in armis erant, castra cras munient. 9. Portate, servi, ad conclave meum omnes hos libros, qui in mensa sunt!

K. 1. You will not, will you, lead back all the infantry forces at once to the camp? 2. Where will you station the cavalry?—I shall station them all on the wings. 3. I will send the slave, whom you see, at once to the city. 4. The enemy will never have fought more bravely than to-day. 5. Have you often been in Rome?—I have never been in Rome. 6. Are you older than your brother?—I am the youngest of all my brothers. 7. Do you always carry your books on your head? Are you not tired? 8. Did not the girl's beautiful voice charm all? 9. These ships are far faster than those. 10. Have you heard the *things* which I was saying?—I am deaf, I did not hear your words.

L. 1. Quid, pueri, magistro dicetis?—Omnia ei, quae tibi jam diximus, dicemus. 2. Contentine fuistis ejus oratione?—Non totam orationem, sed pauca solum verba audivimus. 3. Ama matrem, cui non vitam solum sed omnia etiam quae habes et habebis debes. 4. Equitum pars in dextro, pars in sinistro, cornu collocatur. 5. Pulchriores quam quos in hortis habes flores nunquam videbo. 6. Utri superabunt?—Hostes: in animis nostrorum nulla est spes victoriae. 7. Hi servi, pessimi homines, dominum suum, optimum virum, semper culpabant. 8. Nunquam latiore aggere quam hic est castra muniuntur. 9. Hoc conclave ducentos pedes longum esse dicitur. 10. Fluctusne navem in litus agunt?—Nautae non jam regere possunt.

M. 1. My brother is always charmed by your witty

talk. 2. Do you hear those shouts?—I hear. Have our men put the enemy to flight? 3. What! sailor, did you fear these little clouds? you ought to despise them. 4. The enemy will soon come together. 5. The cavalry were killing all who were in arms. 6. Will you not ask help from me, your best friend? 7. Urge on your horses, soldiers! you will soon have put the enemy to flight. 8. Good-bye, mother! good-bye, brothers! expect frequent letters! 9. The boy lived ten years only. 10. Have you not fought bravely, soldiers? Have you not defeated the enemy?—We have fought very bravely, and yet (*neque*) we have not defeated the enemy.

## SECTION 56.

### VERBS: PASSIVE VOICE.

#### FIRST CONJUGATION: INDICATIVE MOOD

*Present, Future, and Imperfect Tenses.*

**Amāri**, *to be loved.*

Present: Amor, *I am loved.*

Future: Amābor, *I shall be loved.*

Imperfect: Amābar, *I was being loved.*

[133.] 1. Fratres a sororibus, sorores a fratribus, amari debent. 2. Epistulis tuis, frater, omnes delectamur! 3. Milites, qui castra muniebant, a duce laudantur. 4. Praemio non ornaris, nam pigerrimus fuisti. 5. Adventus classis nuntiatur; paucis diebus in portu erit. 6. Num ab hostibus, quos saepe jam superavistis, nunc ipsi superabimini? 7. Nuntios-ne ad Caesarem cotidie mittebant? 8. Castra jam a copiis hostium pedestribus circumdabantur. 9. Agri nostri totum diem ab equitibus vastabantur. 10. Amicus tuus carminibus

Horatii delectabitur. 11. Crebriores epistulas nuntiosque ad Caesarem de his rebus mittent. 12. Ego amicique mei pulcherrima puellae voce delectabamur.

[134.] 1. It is not given to all men to be always well. 2. It is pleasant to be sometimes praised. 3. The Roman fleet is being put to flight by the enemy. 4. I am charmed with your welcome letter. 5. You are blamed by those (*is*) who ought to praise you. 6. The arrival of the whole fleet was being announced. 7. The messengers were coming from Caesar to the fleet. 8. That burden will very easily be carried by the slaves. 9. We all desire to be praised. 10. All these things will soon be announced. 11. Will the messengers come soon?—I do not know. 12. The cavalry were being posted on the left wing. 13. The table will be decorated with flowers by the girls. 14. The whole fleet of the enemy will soon be put to flight. 15. Were you not charmed with the king's speech?

## SECTION 57.

### FIRST CONJUGATION.

PASSIVE VOICE: INDICATIVE MOOD—(*Continued*).

Perfect: Amātus sum, *I have been loved, I was loved.*

Future Perfect: Amatus ero, *I shall have been loved.*

Pluperfect: Amatus eram, *I had been loved.*

[135.] 1. A ceteris saepe, a te, Quinte, nunquam laudatus sum! 2. Nonne pars equitum in dextro cornu collocabitur? 3. Triginta jam dies agri nostri vastati sunt; frustra auxilium expectatur. 4. Magna pars Italiae a Carthaginiensibus vastata erat. 5. Adventus navium longarum a crebris nuntiis nuntiatus erit. 6.



Nonne tu, Cornelia, hoc gratissimo nuntio delectata es? 7. Floribus, qui in horto tuo sunt, saepe delectati sumus. 8. Classis jam omnibus rebus ornata est. 9. Hoc gravissimum onus a parvo puero ad urbem portatum erat. 10. Copiae hostium a nostris saepe jam fugatae sunt. 11. Calcaria mea fratri tuo a patre data sunt. 12. Ab equitibus nostris sex totas horas fortissime pugnatum est.

Notice that the participle (*amatus*, *laudatus*, etc.), which along with *sum* goes to form these tenses, has to agree in gender and number with the subject.

[136.] 1. You have been praised by everybody: are you not satisfied? 2. Our lands have been laid waste by the cavalry. 3. Some have been praised, others have been blamed. 4. The arrival of the ambassadors had already been announced. 5. He is said to be charmed with his son's diligence. 6. Will they not wish to be loved and praised? 7. My sisters have been delighted with the queen's words. 8. I have been praised by some, *and* blamed by others. 9. The horse had been urged on by the spur. 10. The boy will have been urged on by the master. 11. The enemy's ships were being put to flight by Caesar. 12. *She* was praised (perfect) both by her father and by her mother. 13. The camp was being surrounded by a high rampart. 14. He was praised by many, and blamed by few. 15. These girls are frightened by the smallest things.

### XXIII. A Cork Leg.

Viator Britannicus, a fera quadam atque inculta gente captus, diu de salute sua desperabat. Tandem novum quidem et inauditum consilium capit. Cultrum enim primo in alterum crus (corticeum erat) ridens infixit: mirantur qui circumstabant barbari, et paululum

recedunt. Deinde totum crus exuit, et minaci vultu manibus supra caput vibravit. Tum vero illi, maximo commoti timore, summa vi in pedes se dederunt.

## SECTION 58.

## SECOND CONJUGATION.

## PASSIVE VOICE: INDICATIVE MOOD

**Monēri**, *to be advised.*

Present: Moneor, *I am advised.*

Future: Monēbor, *I shall be advised.*

Imperfect: Monēbar, *I was (being) advised.*

[137.] 1. Amari quam timeri multo melius est. 2. Avesne clamoribus puerorum terrebantur? 3. Magna pecunia mihi ab illo homine diu debetur. 4. Tota classis in litore a nobis videbatur. 5. Rex hoc nuntio contentus esse videtur (*seems*). 6. Illi pueri diutius manere non possunt. 7. Omnes portu navibusque delectabimur. 8. Nonne puer aliquando a magistro monebitur? 9. Mater mea diutissime expectata erat. 10. Prora hujus navis multis floribus a nautis ornata erit.

[138.] 1. The enemy's ships are seen by our sailors. 2. They were frightening the horses with their spurs. 3. The horses were frightened by the enemy's shouts. 4. The books have been carried to your room. 5. The leader is not feared by the soldiers. 6. The enemy's lands had been laid waste by us. 7. In vain were they warned by their father. 8. Your friends were remaining at home a very long time. 9. The sailors were seen in the city. 10. His (*ejus*) conversation seems to me to be very witty. 11. The soldiers seemed to be frightened by the waves. 12. The enemy will not be frightened by Caesar's arrival.

## SECTION 59.

## SECOND CONJUGATION.

PASSIVE VOICE : INDICATIVE MOOD—(*Continued*).

Perfect :            Monitus sum, *I have been advised, I was advised.*

Future Perfect : Monitus ero, *I shall have been advised.*

Pluperfect :       Monitus eram, *I had been advised.*

[139.] 1. Ego, amici, vestris clamoribus non sum territus! 2. Pueri a me saepe moniti, saepe culpati sunt. 3. Balbus semper optimus civis habebatur.<sup>1</sup> 4. Imago reginae pulcherrima habita est. 5. Equi equitesque crebro fulgure territi sunt. 6. Major sororum ab omnibus pulchrior habebatur. 7. Oratio Ciceronis ab omnibus bonis utilissima habita est. 8. Nonne saepe jam a nobis moniti eratis? 9. Sorores, nonne fluctibus territae estis? 10. Ille vir omnium sapientissimus haberi dicitur. 11. Sapientes clamoribus istorum hominum non territi erunt. 12. Tempora antiqua a multis saepe optima habentur.

[140.] 1. The sailors were being frightened by the arrival of the ships of the enemy. 2. The horses were frightened (perfect) by the lightning. 3. The boys have often been warned by the master. 4. Julia is considered by far the most beautiful of the sisters. 5. These flowers have always been considered very beautiful. 6. Your little brother will have been frightened by the lightning. 7. He has always been considered a very good boy. 8. Caesar, you have been praised by all the citizens! 9. Nobody ought to be considered very wise. 10. The greater part of the soldiers will be kept (*habeo*) in camp.

<sup>1</sup> *Haberi*, "to be held," i.e. "considered."

11. Marcus has always been considered, and is, a very good citizen. 12. Some go out from the camp, others are ordered to remain. 13. The sailors have been warned again and again. 14. Will you not be delighted with your son's diligence? 15. You will not, will you, be frightened by the spirited horse?

#### XXIV. David and Goliath.

Rex quidam cum barbaris bellum gerebat. Ex hac parte copiae regiae castra posuerant, ex altera parte barbari; et inter duos exercitus vallis erat. Veniebat autem cotidie ex castris barbarorum vir ingentis magnitudinis; unumque ex regiis copiis ad singulare certamen provocabat, magna voce clamans, "Eligite ex vobis virum unum; is mecum pugnabit. Si ille vicerit, erimus vobis servi; sin ego vicerō, vos nobis servi eritis."

Erat autem puer quidam, cujus fratres majores natu in regiis castris erant. Hunc pater panem, caseum, vinum ad fratres in castra portare jubet. Venit igitur ille puer hostemque videt, et verba ejus contumeliosa audit. "Quid!" dicit militibus qui adstabant, "nemo cum hoc homine configere audet?" "Nemo," respondent milites. Fratres autem irati dixerunt, "Cur huc venisti, et istas paucas oves in deserto reliquisti? Nota est nobis superbia tua. Nonne pugnam videre cupivisti?"

#### XXV. David and Goliath—(*Continued*).

At ille puer ad regem statim properat. "Rex," inquit, "cum hoc homine configere cupio." Quid! tu qui puer imberbis es, cum tanto viro configere audes? "At ego, puer, ut ais, imberbis, dum oves patris pasco, ipse manu et leonem et ursum interfeci, neque ego hujus hominis verba timeo. Deus enim, qui me de leone liberavit, me de manu hostis liberabit." Tum rex, tanta

pueri audacia attonitus, galeam et loricam et gladium suum dedit. Respondet ille "Harum rerum usum non habeo." Tulit autem baculum suum, quod semper in manibus habebat, et quinque lapides de torrente eligit, fundamque manu tulit. Ita armatus adversus hostem procedit. Hostis autem, puerum videns, ridet, "Num ego," inquit, "canis sum? venis enim ad me cum baculo et lapidibus. Hodie pulchrum tuum corpus avibus ferisque dabo." Tum puer, "Tu venis ad me cum gladio et hasta et clipeo; ego ad te, Deo adjutore, venio." Puer autem unum lapidem tulit, et funda jecit. Hostem lapis in frontem percutit; pronus ille ad terram decedit. Currit statim puer, et gladium hostis educit: interficit hominem, et caput ejus praecidit. Tum regiae copiae, omni metu liberatae, adversus hostes impetum faciunt: ipsos fundunt fugantque, castra omnium rerum plena capiunt.

## SECTION 60.

### THIRD CONJUGATION.

#### PASSIVE VOICE: INDICATIVE MOOD

*Rēgi, to be ruled.*

Present: Regor, *I am ruled.*

Future: Regar, *I shall be ruled.*

Imperfect: Regēbar, *I was (being) ruled.*

[141.] 1. Nonne saepe, serve, ad urbem a domino mittēris? 2. Cras a patre, puer, ad regios hortos mittēris! 3. Quid! nonne his telis, quae ab omnibus partibus jaciuntur, interficiemur? 4. Cotidie in silvas a matre mittimur. 5. Amo te, mi frater, sed a te contemnor! 6. Hae copiae hodie educi non debent. 7. Vectigalia omnia tempore pendentur. 8. Crebri nuntii ad Cae-



sarem de his rebus mittentur. 9. Hoc poema ab omnibus legetur et laudabitur. 10. Caesar omnes copias pro castris instruxit. 11. Tota classis pro portu instruebatur. 12. Illi servi a domino saepe moniti sunt, sed tacent nunquam. 13. Libri, qui heri optimi habebantur, hodie contemnuntur.

[142.] 1. The soldiers were being drawn up before the camp. 2. The ten ships will be drawn up before the city. 3. I am being sent to the city by my brother. 4. You will be sent to the master to-morrow. 5. You ought to be sent to the camp. 6. The ships were being driven on to the shore by the waves. 7. The messengers will be led to the king by the soldiers. 8. You are being despised by the soldiers. 9. The third legion will be led out of the camp in the morning. 10. Our soldiers will be killed by the cavalry of the enemy. 11. The royal fleet of twenty ships is being drawn up. 12. What are you doing, boys? You had been often warned.

## SECTION 61.

### VERBS : THIRD CONJUGATION.

#### PASSIVE VOICE : INDICATIVE MOOD—(*Continued*).

Perfect : Rectus sum, *I have been ruled, I was ruled.*  
 Future Perfect : Rectus ero, *I shall have been ruled.*  
 Pluperfect : Rectus eram, *I had been ruled.*

[143.] 1. Copiae, quae mane educebantur, jam reductae sunt. 2. Navis a nauta optime erat recta. 3. Annos natus novem ad magistrum a patre ductus sum. 4. Hi pueri mihi pigerrimi esse videntur. 5. Triginta jam naves a militibus aedificatae sunt. 6. Tota classis,

quae ducentarum navium erat, pro portu instructa est. 7. Brevi tempore omnes copiae pro castris instructae erunt. 8. Legiones a Caesare ad flumen ductae sunt. 9. Legati ad regem hostium mox mittentur. 10. Nuntii magnis clamoribus ad castra a militibus ducti erant. 11. Hi pueri, immemores magistri, neque libros legebant neque tacebant. 12. Jam fessi sumus; tres horas totas instructi sumus, neque hostes videntur.

[144.] 1. The soldiers have been led back to the camp. 2. The army had already been drawn up. 3. I was led by the boy's shouts to the river. 4. The merchant will be building a ship for himself. 5. Two legions were led out from the camp. 6. Only a few soldiers will be killed by the darts. 7. The ships will already have been drawn up before the harbour. 8. You will have steered the ship better than the sailor himself. 9. You will not be warned again: you have been often warned already. 10. When will the messengers be sent? They ought to be sent at once. 11. This coast was being inhabited by the sailors. 12. Where are the sailors? The ship ought to be drawn up at once.

## XXVI. Nasica and Ennius.

“Not at Home.”

Nasica aliquando ad poetam Ennium venit. Eum ab ostio quaerit. Respondet ancilla, “Domi non est.” Ita tamen domini jussu dixit, et Ennius intus erat, resque Nasicae nota erat. Paucis post diebus venit Ennius ad Nasicam. “Non est domi,” exclamat ipse Nasica. Tum Ennius “Quid!” inquit, “ego non cognosco vocem tuam?” Respondet Nasica, “Homo es impudens: ego ancillae tuae credidi, tu mihi non credis ipsi.”

## XXVII. Literal Obedience.

Marcus Pūpius Piso, orator Romanus, servos omnes aliquando convocavit. “Nimium,” inquit, “loquaces semper estis, et saepe mihi, domino vestro, molesti estis. Si quid vos interrogaverim, respondebitis; alioquin vos tacere jubeo.” Paucis post diebus Piso servum, et alios amicos, et Clodium quemdam ad convivium invitare jubet. Hora cenae instat. Aderant ceteri convivae omnes: solum Clodium exspectant. “Ubi est noster Clodius? quid agit? Servi, nonne vēnit Clodius?” “Non vēnit,” respondent. Tandem Piso servum, quem Clodium invitare jusserat, ad se vocat. “Nonne Clodium invitavisti?”—“Invitavi.”—“Cur ergo non vēnit?”—“Quia negavit se venire posse.” Tum Piso, iratus, “Cur id non statim dixisti?”—“Quia me non interrogavisti.”

## SECTION 62.

## VERBS: FOURTH CONJUGATION.

## PASSIVE VOICE: INDICATIVE MOOD.

**Audiri**, *to be heard*.

Present: Audior, *I am heard*.

Future: Audiar, *I shall be heard*.

Imperfect: Audiēbar, *I was (being) heard*.

[145.] 1. Voxne reginae ab omnibus civibus audiri potest? 2. Num tua vox auditur? Nonne tacere te jubebam? 3. Haec castra a militibus septimae legionis munientur. 4. Voces vestrae vix a matre audiri possunt. 5. Naves jam aedificatae, et omnibus rebus ornatae, erant. 6. Magister, a quo pueri erudiebantur, triginta

sex annos natus est. 7. Milites, a quibus castra muniebantur, ad castra mox convenient. 8. Regia classis, quae quingentarum navium est, pro portu magno instructa est.

[146.] 1. The lazy boys will be punished by the master. 2. The shouts of the enemy were scarcely being heard in the city. 3. I was being educated by that master. 4. You will be scarcely heard by the soldiers. 5. Soon the birds will be heard in the woods. 6. The ships will soon be drawn up. 7. Four ships had already been drawn up. 8. The camp was being fortified by all the soldiers. 9. You are never silent; you will be punished. 10. The boys were being very well educated.

## SECTION 63.

### VERBS: FOURTH CONJUGATION.

#### PASSIVE VOICE: INDICATIVE MOOD—(*Continued*).

Perfect:            Auditus sum, *I have been heard, I was heard.*

Future Perfect: Auditus ero, *I shall have been heard.*

Pluperfect:        Auditus eram, *I had been heard.*

[147.] 1. Quot nomina a te audita sunt?—Tria verba vix audiui. 2. Quoties ab illo magistro puniti estis?—Nescimus. 3. Estne bene dormitum?—Optime totam noctem dormitum est. 4. Quam est jucundum ab omnibus amari laudarique! 5. Quot milites pro castris telis hostium interficientur? 6. Pueri, qui verba magistri contemnebant, puniti sunt. 7. Quoties a nostris vox ducis acuta audita est? 8. Rebus in adversis quam est jucundum amicorum auxilium! 9. Non eadem a senibus juvenibusque cupiuntur. 10. Quid! num

haec castra aggere jam munita erant? 11. Vox tua vix audita est; nam pueri illi nunquam tacent. 12. Illud flumen, illa silva, isti horti vestri, quam saepe nos delectaverunt!

[148.] 1. Caesar's words were scarcely heard by the soldiers. 2. How many boys have been punished to-day? 3. How often has that bird been heard in the woods? 4. How pleasant it is to be taught by you! 5. How often have you been warned?—Very often. 6. It is better to be warned than to be punished. 7. The camp will have been fortified by all the soldiers. 8. The birds were often heard in the summer; now they cannot be heard. 9. They were killing the birds, they will be punished. 10. How many words did you hear?—We heard the whole speech. 11. How many oaks are there in your gardens?—I do not know. 12. How often will these boys have been punished? 13. Were we not charmed with those gardens of yours? 14. All the soldiers had been led into camp. 15. Those (*is*) who are never punished are not always the best boys.

#### XXVIII. Bacchus and the Pirates.

Praedones quidam puerum in litore stantem vident. Statim propius navi accedunt. Vestes eius splendidas comasque flavas conspiciunt. Eum filium regis esse crediderunt. Dux igitur praedonum comitibus clamat, "Heus! comites, ad litus celeriter navem appellite! puerum statim navi tollemus. Non sine multa pecunia, credo, patri regio puerum reddemus." Jussa ducis nautae celeriter faciunt. Puerum validis compedibus vinciunt. Subito autem puer leviter subrisit: compedes, velut arte magica, decidunt. Tum unus ex nautis sociis dixit, "En! deus hic certo est, vel dei filius! ventos in navem incitabit, et nos non navem



solum, sed vitam etiam amittemus. Puerum divinum statim in litore exponite!" Socii autem credere noluerunt. At ille puer subito verba quaedam murmurat: tum multa et mira prodigia videntur! Mālus enim navis se in vitem convertit, prora coronis floreis ornatur, vinum tota navi fluit. Leo ingens saevusque in prora stat, iratusque fremit. Quid! ipsum etiam mare oculis velut prata videtur; ubi spuma fuit, nunc albae rosae sunt; neque fluctuum murmura, sed velut pecorum voces arboresque, vento agitatae, audiuntur. Nautae autem, magno superati metu, se in mare projiciunt—in delphines statim convortuntur. Tum puer, dum leoni vinum e calice aureo dat, nautae, qui solum restat puerumque deum esse dixerat, "Recte tu quidem dixisti: Bacchus sum, Semeles filius. Tu autem omnem deponere timorem, comes dei semper eris, vitamque laetam ages."

### Recapitulatory Exercises.

N. 1. Hi servi saepe frustra moniti sunt: tempore nunquam domum redeunt. 2. Nihil manibus utilius hominibus datum est. 3. Ab his sapientia, ab illis divitiae contemnebantur. 4. Cur, milites, non statim in hostes impetum facitis?—Caesaris adventus exspectatur. 5. Omnes hi milites, qui hoc tempore in armis sunt, in hostes cras educentur. 6. Nostri nautae neque fulgure et nubibus, neque multitudine navium regiarum, terreri possunt. 7. Qui mei sunt, mihi da; tuos libros tibi habe!—Hoc faciam. 8. Hic puer sibi sapientissimus esse videtur: a ceteris idem contemnitur. 9. Naves, quae hieme aedificatae erant, aestate pro portu instruebantur. 10. Cicero auxilium petebat: duae a Caesare legiones statim ad castra Ciceronis ductae sunt.

O. 1. The soldiers are ordered by the leader to be

in arms at once. 2. These boys will be sent home by the master. 3. Read your book, boy; you will soon be sent home. 4. Are you not sent to the city often?—I am sent not often only, but every day. 5. What! will you not be silent? you will soon be punished by your mother. 6. Does it not seem to you a very difficult thing to be silent long? 7. You, who are a soldier, will not be frightened by these shouts. 8. These boys will have been more often punished than praised. 9. Those men have been very well taught by adversity. 10. I have always been loved by you: of all my friends you are by far the dearest to me.

P. 1. Caesar jam de his rebus omnibus certior factus est; ipse ego ei omnia dicebam. 2. Alii sibi, alii, sui immemores, amicis solum timent. 3. Nulla re quam libris conclavia melius ornantur—Scio, meum plenum est et Graecorum et Latinorum librorum quos semper lego—Optime facis. 4. Quando naves aedificatae erunt?—Jam sunt aedificatae—Summam vestram diligentiam laudo. Ornataene etiam sunt naves?—Brevi tempore omnibus rebus ornatae erunt.

5. Audivistisne orationem illius clarissimi oratoris?—Ego, Quinte, aderam; sed, ut scis, surdus sum, pauca solum verba audiui—Tu, Marce, num tu etiam surdus es? Quid dixit ille vir?—Optime ego quidem omnia audiui; non facetissima solum sed utilissima etiam oratio fuit; omnes, qui aderant, delectavit.

6. Milites! nonne vobis victoria quam vita multo carior est? Omnis spes civitatis in vobis est. Memores patrum matrumque et parvorum filiorum, memores etiam virtutis vestrae, tela jacite, incitate equos, acerrimum in hos homines impetum facite! Quoties a vobis ipsis et a majoribus vestris ingens hostium multitudo superata et fugata est? Et nunc etiam brevi tempore superatae

erunt hae regiae copiae. Tum a civibus praemia, laudes, omnia quae homines cupiunt, exspectare jubeo.

Q. 1. That ship has always been considered the fastest of the whole fleet. 2. The soldiers of the fifth and eighth legions will soon be drawn up. 3. Your father was delighted with your diligence: all the masters were praising you. 4. The soldiers of the enemy, who now surround our camp, will soon be killed by our darts. 5. Industrious boys are blamed by nobody; but all will blame the lazy. 6. Fifteen ships had been built and fitted up by the soldiers. 7. The greater part of this great city was at that (*is*) time inhabited by German merchants. 8. The darts were being thrown in vain: the camp had been very well fortified. 9. The infantry forces were remaining in the camp; the cavalry fought very bravely before the camp. 10. Hold your tongues, boys!—We hear; we will be silent in a short time.

# CONJUGATION OF THE VERBS.

**Esse, to be.**

For the Indicative, see pp. 58-61.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

### PRESENT TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i> <b>Es,</b>	{ <i>Be thou</i>		<i>Plur.</i> <b>Este,</b>	{ <i>Be ye</i>
<b>esto,</b>			<b>estōte,</b>	
<b>esto,</b>			<b>sunto,</b>	
	<i>let him be.</i>			<i>let them be.</i>

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

### PRESENT TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i> <b>Sim,</b>	<i>I may be</i>		<i>Plur.</i> <b>Simus,</b>	<i>We may be</i>
<b>sis,</b>	<i>thou mayst be</i>		<b>sitis,</b>	<i>ye may be</i>
<b>sit,</b>	<i>he may be.</i>		<b>sint,</b>	<i>they may be.</i>

### IMPERFECT.

<i>Sing.</i> <b>Essem or</b>	{ <i>I might be</i>		<i>Plur.</i> <b>Essēmus or</b>	{ <i>We might be</i>
<b>forem,</b>			<b>forēmus,</b>	
<b>esses or</b>			<b>essētis or</b>	
<b>fores,</b>			<b>forētis,</b>	
<b>esset or</b>	{ <i>thou mightst be</i>		<b>essent or</b>	{ <i>ye might be</i>
<b>foret,</b>			<b>forent,</b>	
	<i>he might be.</i>			<i>they might be.</i>

### PERFECT.

<i>Sing.</i> <b>Fuërim,</b>	<i>I may have been</i>		<i>Plur.</i> <b>Fuerimus,</b>	<i>We may have been</i>
<b>fueris,</b>	<i>thou mayst have been</i>		<b>fueritis,</b>	<i>ye may have been</i>
<b>fuerit,</b>	<i>he may have been.</i>		<b>fuerint,</b>	<i>they may have been.</i>

### PLUPERFECT.

<i>S.</i> <b>Fuissem,</b>	<i>I should</i>	{ <i>have</i>	<i>P.</i> <b>Fuissēmus,</b>	<i>We should</i>	{ <i>have</i>
<b>fuissem,</b>	<i>thou wouldst</i>		<b>fuissētis,</b>	<i>ye would</i>	
<b>fuisset,</b>	<i>he would</i>		<b>fuissent,</b>	<i>they would</i>	
	<i>been.</i>			<i>been.</i>	

## INFINITIVE.

<b>PRESENT,</b>	<b>Esse,</b>	<i>to be.</i>
<b>PERFECT, and PLUPERFECT,</b>	<b>Fuisse,</b>	<i>to have been.</i>
<b>FUTURE,</b>	<b>Fore or futūrus esse,</b>	<i>to be about to be.</i>
<b>FUTURE PARTICIPLE,</b>	<b>Futurus,</b>	<i>about to be.</i>

## FIRST CONJUGATION : ACTIVE.

**Amāre, to love.**

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i> <b>Amo,</b>	<i>I love</i>	<i>Plur.</i> <b>Amāmus,</b>	<i>We love</i>
<b>amas,</b>	<i>thou lovest</i>	<b>amātis,</b>	<i>ye love</i>
<b>amat,</b>	<i>he loves.</i>	<b>amant,</b>	<i>they love.</i>

## FUTURE.

<i>Sing.</i> <b>Amābo,</b>	<i>I shall love</i>	<i>Plur.</i> <b>Amabimus,</b>	<i>We shall love</i>
<b>amabis,</b>	<i>thou wilt love</i>	<b>amabitis,</b>	<i>ye will love</i>
<b>amabit,</b>	<i>he will love.</i>	<b>amabunt,</b>	<i>they will love.</i>

## IMPERFECT.

<i>Sing.</i> <b>Amābam,</b>	<i>I was loving</i>	<i>Plur.</i> <b>Amabāmus,</b>	<i>We were loving</i>
<b>amabas,</b>	<i>thou wast loving</i>	<b>amabātis,</b>	<i>ye were loving</i>
<b>amabat,</b>	<i>he was loving.</i>	<b>amabant,</b>	<i>they were loving.</i>

## PERFECT.

<i>Sing.</i> <b>Amāvi,</b>	<i>I have loved, or</i>	<i>Plur.</i> <b>Amavimus,</b>	<i>We have loved,</i>
	<i>I loved</i>		<i>or we loved</i>
<b>amavisti,</b>	<i>thou hast loved,</i>	<b>amavistis,</b>	<i>ye have loved,</i>
	<i>or thou lovedst</i>		<i>or ye loved</i>
<b>amavit,</b>	<i>he has loved, or</i>	<b>amavērunt,</b>	<i>they have loved,</i>
	<i>he loved.</i>	<b>or amavēre,</b>	<i>or they loved.</i>

## FUTURE PERFECT.

<i>Sing.</i> <b>Amavēro,</b>	<i>I shall</i>	} <i>have</i>	<i>P.</i> <b>Amaverimus,</b>	<i>We shall</i>
<b>amaveris,</b>	<i>thou wilt</i>		<b>amaveritis,</b>	<i>ye will</i>
<b>amaverit,</b>	<i>he will</i>		<b>amaverint,</b>	<i>they will</i>
				} <i>loved.</i>

## PLUPERFECT.

<i>Sing.</i> <b>Amavēram,</b>	<i>I had loved</i>	<i>Plur.</i> <b>Amaverāmus,</b>	<i>We had loved</i>
<b>amaveras,</b>	<i>thou hadst loved</i>	<b>amaveratis,</b>	<i>ye had loved</i>
<b>amaverat,</b>	<i>he had loved.</i>	<b>amaverant,</b>	<i>they had loved.</i>

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

<i>Sing.</i> <b>Amā,</b>	} <i>Love thou</i>	<i>Plur.</i> <b>Amāte,</b>	} <i>Love ye</i>
<b>amato,</b>		<b>amatōte,</b>	
<b>amato,</b>		<b>amanto,</b>	
	<i>let him love.</i>		<i>let them love.</i>



SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i>	<b>Amem,</b>	<i>I may love</i>	<i>Plur.</i>	<b>Amēmus,</b>	<i>We may love</i>
	<b>ames,</b>	<i>thou mayst love</i>		<b>amētis,</b>	<i>ye may love</i>
	<b>amet,</b>	<i>he may love.</i>		<b>ament,</b>	<i>they may love.</i>

IMPERFECT.

<i>Sing.</i>	<b>Amārem,</b>	<i>I might love</i>	<i>Plur.</i>	<b>Amarēmus,</b>	<i>We might love</i>
	<b>amares,</b>	<i>thou mightst love</i>		<b>amarētis,</b>	<i>ye might love</i>
	<b>amaret,</b>	<i>he might love.</i>		<b>amarent,</b>	<i>they might love.</i>

PERFECT.

<i>S.</i>	<b>Amāvērīm,</b>	<i>I may</i>	} <i>have loved.</i>	<i>P.</i>	<b>Amaverīmus,</b>	<i>We may</i>	} <i>have loved.</i>
	<b>amaveris,</b>	<i>thou mayst</i>			<b>amaverītis,</b>	<i>ye may</i>	
	<b>amaverit,</b>	<i>he may</i>			<b>amaverint,</b>	<i>they may</i>	

PLUPERFECT.

<i>S.</i>	<b>Amavissem,</b>	<i>I should</i>	} <i>have loved.</i>	<i>P.</i>	<b>Amavissēmus,</b>	<i>We should</i>	} <i>have loved.</i>
	<b>amavisses,</b>	<i>thou wouldst</i>			<b>amavissētis,</b>	<i>ye would</i>	
	<b>amavisset,</b>	<i>he would</i>			<b>amavissent,</b>	<i>they would</i>	

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT,	<b>Amāre,</b>	<i>to love</i>
PERF. and PLUP.,	<b>amavisse,</b>	<i>to have loved</i>
FUTURE,	<b>amatūrus esse,</b>	<i>to be about to love.</i>

GERUND.

<i>Acc.</i>	<b>Amandum,</b>	<i>loving</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<b>amandi,</b>	<i>of loving</i>
<i>Dat. &amp; Abl.</i>	<b>amando,</b>	{ <i>to or by</i> <i>loving.</i>

SUPINES.

<b>Amātum,</b>	<i>to love.</i>
<b>amatu,</b>	<i>in loving, or to be loved.</i>

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT,	<b>Amans</b> ( <i>Gen. amantis</i> ),	<i>loving.</i>
FUTURE,	<b>amatūrus</b> ( <i>a, um</i> ),	<i>about to love.</i>

## SECOND CONJUGATION : ACTIVE.

Mōnēre, to advise.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT TENSE.

S. Moneo,	<i>I advise</i>	P. Monēmus,	<i>We advise</i>
mones,	<i>thou advisest</i>	monētis,	<i>ye advise</i>
monet,	<i>he advises.</i>	monent,	<i>they advise.</i>

## FUTURE.

S. Monēbo,	<i>I shall advise</i>	P. Monebimus,	<i>We shall advise</i>
monebis,	<i>thou wilt advise</i>	monebītis,	<i>ye will advise</i>
monebit,	<i>he will advise.</i>	monebunt,	<i>they will advise.</i>

## IMPERFECT.

S. Monēbam,	<i>I was advising</i>	P. Monebāmus,	<i>We were advising</i>
monebas,	<i>thou wast advising</i>	monebātis,	<i>ye were advising</i>
monebat,	<i>he was advising.</i>	monebant,	<i>they were advising.</i>

## PERFECT.

S. Monui,	<i>I have advised,</i>	P. Monuimus,	<i>We have advised,</i>
	<i>I advised</i>		<i>we advised</i>
monuisti,	<i>thou hast advised,</i>	monuistis,	<i>ye have advised,</i>
	<i>thou advisedst</i>		<i>ye advised</i>
monuit,	<i>he has advised,</i>	monuērunt,	{ <i>they have ad-</i>
	<i>he advised.</i>	or monuēre,	
			<i>vised, or</i>
			<i>they advised.</i>

## FUTURE PERFECT.

S. Monuēro,	<i>I shall</i>	P. Monuerimus,	<i>We shall</i>
monueris,	<i>thou wilt</i>	monuerītis,	<i>ye will</i>
monuerit,	<i>he will</i>	monuerint,	<i>they will.</i>
	} <i>have</i>		} <i>have</i>
	<i>advised.</i>		<i>advised.</i>

## PLUPERFECT.

S. Monuēram,	<i>I had advised</i>	P. Monuerāmus,	<i>We had advised</i>
monueras,	<i>thou hadst advised</i>	monuerātis,	<i>ye had advised</i>
monuerat,	<i>he had advised.</i>	monuerant,	<i>they had advised.</i>

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

S. Monē, }	<i>Advise thou</i>	P. Monēte, }	<i>Advise ye</i>
monito, }		monitōte, }	
monito,	<i>let him advise.</i>	monento,	<i>let them advise.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

<b>S. Moneam,</b>	<i>I may advise</i>	<b>P. Moneāmus,</b>	<i>We may advise</i>
<b>moneas,</b>	<i>thou mayst advise</i>	<b>moneātis,</b>	<i>ye may advise</i>
<b>moneat,</b>	<i>he may advise</i>	<b>moneant,</b>	<i>they may advise.</i>

IMPERFECT.

<b>S. Monērem,</b>	<i>I might advise</i>	<b>P. Monerēmus,</b>	<i>We might advise</i>
<b>moneres,</b>	<i>thou mightst advise</i>	<b>monerētis,</b>	<i>ye might advise</i>
<b>moneret,</b>	<i>he might advise</i>	<b>monerent,</b>	<i>they might advise.</i>

PERFECT.

<b>S. Monuērim,</b>	<i>I may</i>	} <i>have advised.</i>	<b>P. Monuerīmus,</b>	<i>We may</i>	} <i>have advised.</i>
<b>monueris,</b>	<i>thou mayst</i>		<b>monuerītis,</b>	<i>ye may</i>	
<b>monuerit,</b>	<i>he may</i>		<b>monuerint,</b>	<i>they may</i>	

PLUPERFECT.

<b>S. Monuissēm,</b>	<i>I should</i>	} <i>have advised.</i>	<b>P. Monuissēmus,</b>	<i>We should</i>	} <i>have advised.</i>
<b>monuisses,</b>	<i>thou wouldst</i>		<b>monuissētis,</b>	<i>ye would</i>	
<b>monuisset,</b>	<i>he would</i>		<b>monuissent,</b>	<i>they would</i>	

INFINITIVE.

<b>PRESENT,</b>	<b>Monēre,</b>	<i>to advise</i>
<b>PERF. and PLUP.,</b>	<b>Monuisse,</b>	<i>to have advised</i>
<b>FUTURE,</b>	<b>monitūrus esse</b>	<i>to be about to advise.</i>

GERUND.

<b>Acc.</b>	<b>Monendum,</b>	<i>advising</i>
<b>Gen.</b>	<b>monendi,</b>	<i>of advising</i>
<b>Dat. and Abl.</b>	} <b>monendo,</b>	} <i>to or by advising.</i>

SUPINES.

<b>Monitum,</b>	<i>to advise</i>
<b>monitu,</b>	<i>in advising, or to be advised.</i>

PARTICIPLES.

<b>PRESENT,</b>	<b>Monens (-entis),</b>	<i>advising</i>
<b>FUTURE,</b>	<b>Monitūrus (a, um),</b>	<i>about to advise.</i>

## THIRD CONJUGATION : ACTIVE.

Rēgĕre, to rule.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT TENSE.

<i>S. Rēgo,</i> <i>regis,</i> <i>regit,</i>	<i>I rule</i> <i>thou rulest</i> <i>he rules.</i>	<i>P. Regĭmus,</i> <i>regĭtis,</i> <i>regunt,</i>	<i>We rule</i> <i>ye rule</i> <i>they rule.</i>
---	---	---	---

## FUTURE.

<i>S. Regam,</i> <i>regēs,</i> <i>reget,</i>	<i>I shall rule</i> <i>thou wilt rule</i> <i>he will rule.</i>	<i>P. Regēmus,</i> <i>regētis,</i> <i>regent,</i>	<i>We shall rule</i> <i>ye will rule</i> <i>they will rule.</i>
--	--	---	---

## IMPERFECT.

<i>S. Regēbam,</i> <i>regebas,</i> <i>regebat,</i>	<i>I was ruling</i> <i>thou wast ruling</i> <i>he was ruling.</i>	<i>P. Regebāmus,</i> <i>regebātis,</i> <i>regebant,</i>	<i>We were ruling</i> <i>ye were ruling</i> <i>they were ruling.</i>
--	---	---	--

## PERFECT.

<i>S. Rexi,</i>  <i>rexisti,</i>  <i>rexit,</i>	<i>I have ruled, I</i> <i>ruled</i> <i>thou hast ruled,</i> <i>thou ruledst</i> <i>he has ruled, he</i> <i>ruled.</i>	<i>P. Rexĭmus,</i>  <i>rexistis,</i>  <i>rexērunt or</i> <i>rexĕre,</i>	<i>We have ruled,</i> <i>we ruled</i> <i>ye have ruled,</i> <i>ye ruled</i> <i>they have ruled,</i> <i>they rule.</i>
---	--	--	--

## FUTURE PERFECT.

<i>S. Rexĕro,</i> <i>rexeris,</i> <i>rexerit,</i>	<i>I shall</i> <i>thou wilt</i> <i>he will</i>	<i>P. Rexerĭmus,</i> <i>rexerĭtis,</i> <i>rexerint,</i>	<i>We shall</i> <i>ye will</i> <i>they will</i>
---	--	---	---

## PLUPERFECT.

<i>S. Rexĕram,</i> <i>rexeras,</i> <i>rexerat,</i>	<i>I had ruled</i> <i>thou hadst ruled</i> <i>he had ruled.</i>	<i>P. Rexerāmus,</i> <i>rexerātis,</i> <i>rexerant,</i>	<i>We had ruled</i> <i>ye had ruled</i> <i>they had ruled.</i>
--	---	---	--

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

<i>S. Regĕ,</i> } <i>regĭto,</i> }	<i>Rule thou</i> <i>let him rule.</i>	<i>P. Regĭte,</i> } <i>regitōte,</i> }	<i>Rule ye</i> <i>let them rule.</i>
---------------------------------------	--	---	---

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

<b>S. Regam,</b>	<i>I may rule</i>	<b>P. Regāmus,</b>	<i>We may rule</i>
<b>regas,</b>	<i>thou mayst rule</i>	<b>regātis,</b>	<i>you may rule</i>
<b>regat,</b>	<i>he may rule.</i>	<b>regant,</b>	<i>they may rule.</i>

IMPERFECT.

<b>S. Regērem,</b>	<i>I might rule</i>	<b>P. Regerēmus,</b>	<i>We might rule</i>
<b>regeres,</b>	<i>thou mightst rule</i>	<b>regerētis,</b>	<i>you might rule</i>
<b>regeret,</b>	<i>he might rule.</i>	<b>regerent,</b>	<i>they might rule.</i>

PERFECT.

<b>S. Rexērim,</b>	<i>I may</i>	} <i>have ruled.</i>	<b>P. Rexterimus,</b>	<i>We may</i>	} <i>have ruled.</i>
<b>rexeris,</b>	<i>thou mayst</i>		<b>rexerītis,</b>	<i>ye may</i>	
<b>rexerit,</b>	<i>he may</i>		<b>rexerint,</b>	<i>they may</i>	

PLUPERFECT.

<b>S. Rexissem,</b>	<i>I might</i>	} <i>have ruled.</i>	<b>P. Rexissēmus,</b>	<i>We might</i>	} <i>have ruled.</i>
<b>rexisses,</b>	<i>thou mightst</i>		<b>rexissētis,</b>	<i>ye might</i>	
<b>rexisset,</b>	<i>he might</i>		<b>rexissent,</b>	<i>they might</i>	

INFINITIVE.

<b>PRESENT,</b>	<b>Regere,</b>	<i>to rule</i>
<b>PERFECT,</b>	<b>rexisse,</b>	<i>to have ruled</i>
<b>FUTURE,</b>	<b>rectūrus esse,</b>	<i>to be about to rule.</i>

GERUND.

SUPINES.

<b>Acc.</b>	<b>Regendum,</b>	<i>ruling</i>	<b>Rectum,</b>	<i>to rule</i>
<b>Gen.</b>	<b>regendi,</b>	<i>of ruling</i>	<b>rectu,</b>	<i>in ruling, or</i>
<b>Dat. and</b>	<b>regendo,</b>	{ <i>to or by</i>		<i>to be ruled.</i>
<b>Abl.</b>				

PARTICIPLES.

<b>PRESENT,</b>	<b>Regens (-entis),</b>	<i>ruling</i>
<b>FUTURE,</b>	<b>rectūrus (a, um),</b>	<i>about to rule.</i>



## FOURTH CONJUGATION : ACTIVE.

**Audire, to hear.**

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT TENSE.

<i>S. Audio,</i>	<i>I hear</i>	<i>P. Audimus,</i>	<i>We hear</i>
<i>audis,</i>	<i>thou hearest</i>	<i>auditis,</i>	<i>ye hear</i>
<i>audit,</i>	<i>he hears.</i>	<i>audiunt,</i>	<i>they hear.</i>

## FUTURE.

<i>S. Audiam,</i>	<i>I shall hear</i>	<i>P. Audiēmus,</i>	<i>We shall hear</i>
<i>audies,</i>	<i>thou wilt hear</i>	<i>audiētis,</i>	<i>ye will hear</i>
<i>audiet,</i>	<i>he will hear.</i>	<i>audient,</i>	<i>they will hear.</i>

## IMPERFECT.

<i>S. Audiēbam,</i>	<i>I was hearing</i>	<i>P. Audiebāmus,</i>	<i>We were hearing</i>
<i>audiebas,</i>	<i>thou wast hearing</i>	<i>audiebātis,</i>	<i>ye were hearing</i>
<i>audiebat,</i>	<i>he was hearing.</i>	<i>audiebant,</i>	<i>they were hearing.</i>

## PERFECT.

<i>S. Audīvi,</i>	<i>I have heard, or</i>	<i>P. Audīvīmus,</i>	<i>We have heard,</i>
	<i>I heard</i>		<i>or we heard</i>
<i>audivisti,</i>	<i>thou hast heard,</i>	<i>audivistis,</i>	<i>ye have heard, or</i>
	<i>or thou heardest</i>		<i>ye heard</i>
<i>audivit,</i>	<i>he has heard, or</i>	<i>audivērunt</i>	<i>} they have heard,</i>
	<i>he heard.</i>	<i>or audivēre,</i>	
			<i>} or they heard.</i>

## FUTURE PERFECT.

<i>S. Audivēro,</i>	<i>I shall</i>	<i>} have</i>	<i>P. Audivērīmus,</i>	<i>We shall</i>	<i>} have</i>
<i>audiveris,</i>	<i>thou wilt</i>		<i>audiverītis,</i>	<i>ye will</i>	
<i>audiverit,</i>	<i>he will</i>		<i>audiverint,</i>	<i>they will</i>	
		<i>} heard.</i>			<i>} heard.</i>

## PLUPERFECT.

<i>S. Audivēram,</i>	<i>I had heard</i>	<i>P. Audiverāmus,</i>	<i>We had heard</i>
<i>audiveras,</i>	<i>thou hadst heard</i>	<i>audiverātis,</i>	<i>ye had heard</i>
<i>audiverat,</i>	<i>he had heard.</i>	<i>audiverant,</i>	<i>they had heard.</i>

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

<i>S. Audi,</i>	<i>} Hear thou</i>	<i>P. Audīte,</i>	<i>} Hear ye</i>
<i>audito,</i>		<i>audītōte,</i>	
<i>audito,</i>		<i>audiunto,</i>	
	<i>let him hear.</i>		<i>let them hear.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

<b>S. Audiam,</b>	<i>I may hear</i>	<b>P. Audiāmus,</b>	<i>We may hear</i>
<b>audias,</b>	<i>thou mayst hear</i>	<b>audiātis,</b>	<i>ye may hear</i>
<b>audiat,</b>	<i>he may hear.</i>	<b>audiant,</b>	<i>they may hear.</i>

IMPERFECT.

<b>S. Audīrem,</b>	<i>I might hear</i>	<b>P. Audirēmus,</b>	<i>We might hear</i>
<b>audires,</b>	<i>thou mightst hear</i>	<b>audirētis,</b>	<i>ye might hear</i>
<b>audiret,</b>	<i>he might hear.</i>	<b>audirent,</b>	<i>they might hear.</i>

PERFECT.

<b>S. Audīverim,</b>	<i>I may</i>	} <i>have heard.</i>	<b>P. Audīverimus,</b>	<i>We may</i>	} <i>have heard.</i>
<b>audiveris,</b>	<i>thou mayst</i>		<b>audiveritis,</b>	<i>ye may</i>	
<b>audiverit,</b>	<i>he may</i>		<b>audiverint,</b>	<i>they may</i>	

PLUPERFECT.

<b>S. Audivissem,</b>	<i>I should</i>	} <i>have heard.</i>	<b>P. Audivissēmus,</b>	<i>We should</i>	} <i>have heard.</i>
<b>audivisses,</b>	<i>thou wouldst</i>		<b>audivissētis,</b>	<i>ye would</i>	
<b>audivisset,</b>	<i>he would</i>		<b>audivissent,</b>	<i>they would</i>	

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT,	<b>Audire,</b>	<i>to hear</i>
PERFECT,	<b>audivisse,</b>	<i>to have heard</i>
FUTURE,	<b>auditūrus esse,</b>	<i>to be about to hear.</i>

GERUND.

SUPINES.

<b>Acc. Audiendum,</b>	<i>hearing</i>	<b>Auditum,</b>	<i>to hear</i>
<b>Gen. audiendi,</b>	<i>of hearing</i>	<b>audītu,</b>	<i>in hearing, or</i>
<b>Dat. and } audi-</b>	<b>{ to or by</b>		<b>{ to be heard.</b>
<b>Abl. } endo,</b>	<b>{ hearing.</b>		

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT,	<b>Audiens (-entis),</b>	<i>hearing</i>
FUTURE,	<b>auditūrus (a, um),</b>	<i>about to hear.</i>

## FIRST CONJUGATION : PASSIVE VOICE.

*Amāri, to be loved.*

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT TENSE.

<i>S. Amor,</i>	<i>I am loved</i>	<i>P. Amāmur,</i>	<i>We are loved</i>
<i>amāris or</i>	<i>thou art loved</i>	<i>amamini,</i>	<i>ye are loved</i>
<i>amāre,</i>	<i>he is loved.</i>	<i>amantur,</i>	<i>they are loved.</i>
<i>amatur,</i>			

## FUTURE.

<i>S. Amābor,</i>	<i>I shall be loved</i>	<i>P. Amabimur,</i>	<i>We shall be loved</i>
<i>amabēris or</i>	<i>thou wilt be loved</i>	<i>amabimini,</i>	<i>ye will be loved</i>
<i>amabēre,</i>	<i>he will be loved.</i>	<i>amabuntur,</i>	<i>they will be loved.</i>
<i>amabitur,</i>			

## IMPERFECT.

<i>S. Amābar,</i>	<i>I was being</i>	<i>P. Amabāmur,</i>	<i>We were being</i>
	<i>loved</i>		<i>loved</i>
<i>amabāris or</i>	<i>thou wast being</i>	<i>amabāmini,</i>	<i>ye were being</i>
<i>amabāre,</i>	<i>loved</i>		<i>loved</i>
<i>amabatur,</i>	<i>he was being</i>	<i>amabantur,</i>	<i>they were being</i>
	<i>loved.</i>		<i>loved.</i>

## PERFECT.

<i>S. Amātus sum,</i>	<i>I have been loved,</i>	<i>P. Amati</i>	<i>{ We have been loved,</i>
	<i>or was loved</i>	<i>sumus,</i>	<i>{ or were loved</i>
<i>amatus es,</i>	<i>thou hast been</i>	<i>amati</i>	<i>{ ye have been loved,</i>
	<i>loved, or wast</i>	<i>estis,</i>	<i>{ or were loved</i>
	<i>loved</i>		
<i>amatus est,</i>	<i>he has been loved,</i>	<i>amati sunt,</i>	<i>they have been loved,</i>
	<i>or was loved.</i>		<i>or were loved.</i>

## FUTURE PERFECT.

<i>S. Amātus ero,</i>	<i>I shall</i>	<i>P. Amati erimus,</i>	<i>We shall</i>
<i>amatus eris,</i>	<i>thou wilt</i>	<i>amati eritis,</i>	<i>ye will</i>
<i>amatus erit,</i>	<i>he will</i>	<i>amati erunt,</i>	<i>they will</i>
	<i>{ have</i>		<i>{ have</i>
	<i>been</i>		<i>been</i>
	<i>loved.</i>		<i>loved.</i>

## PLUPERFECT.

<i>S. Amātus eram,</i>	<i>I had</i>	<i>P. Amati eramus,</i>	<i>We</i>
<i>amatus eras,</i>	<i>thou hadst</i>	<i>amati eratis,</i>	<i>ye</i>
<i>amatus erat,</i>	<i>he had</i>	<i>amati erant,</i>	<i>they</i>
	<i>{ been</i>		<i>{ had been</i>
	<i>loved.</i>		<i>loved.</i>

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

<i>S. Amāre,</i>	} <i>Be thou loved</i>	<i>P. Amāmini,</i>	<i>Be ye loved</i>
<i>amātor,</i>			
<i>amator,</i>		<i>amantor,</i>	<i>let them be loved.</i>
	<i>let him be loved.</i>		

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

<i>S. Amer,</i>	<i>I may be loved</i>	<i>P. Amēmur,</i>	<i>We may be loved</i>
<i>amēris or</i>	} <i>thou mayst be loved</i>	<i>amēmīni,</i>	<i>ye may be loved</i>
<i>amēre,</i>			
<i>ametur,</i>	<i>he may be loved.</i>	<i>amentur,</i>	<i>they may be loved.</i>

IMPERFECT.

<i>S. Amārer,</i>	<i>I might be loved</i>	<i>P. Amarēmur,</i>	<i>We might be loved</i>
<i>amarēris or</i>	} <i>thou mightst be</i>	<i>amaremini,</i>	<i>ye might be loved</i>
<i>amarēre,</i>			
<i>amaretur,</i>	<i>he might be loved.</i>	<i>amarentur,</i>	<i>they might be loved.</i>

PERFECT.

<i>S. Amātus sim,</i>	<i>I may have been</i>	<i>P. Amati simus,</i>	<i>We may have</i>
	<i>loved</i>		<i>been loved</i>
<i>amatus sis,</i>	<i>thou mayst have</i>	<i>amati sitis,</i>	<i>ye may have</i>
	<i>been loved</i>		<i>been loved</i>
<i>amatus sit,</i>	<i>he may have been</i>	<i>amati sint,</i>	<i>they may have</i>
	<i>loved.</i>		<i>been loved.</i>

PLUPERFECT.

<i>S. Amātus essem,</i>	<i>I should have</i>	<i>P. Amati essemus,</i>	<i>We should have</i>
	<i>been loved</i>		<i>been loved</i>
<i>amatus esses,</i>	<i>thou wouldst</i>	<i>amati essetis,</i>	<i>ye would have</i>
	<i>have been loved</i>		<i>been loved</i>
<i>amatus esset,</i>	<i>he would have</i>	<i>amati essent,</i>	<i>they would have</i>
	<i>been loved.</i>		<i>been loved.</i>

INFINITIVE.

PRES.,	<i>Amāri,</i>	<i>to be loved</i>
PERF.,	<i>amātus (a, um) esse,</i>	<i>to have been loved</i>
FUTURE,	<i>amātum iri,</i>	<i>to be about to be loved.</i>

PARTICIPLES.

PERFECT,	<i>Amātus (a, um),</i>	<i>having been loved</i>
GERUNDIVE,	<i>amandus (a, um),</i>	<i>to be loved.</i>

## SECOND CONJUGATION : PASSIVE.

Mōnēri, to be advised.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT TENSE.

<i>S. Moneor,</i>	<i>I am advised</i>	<i>P. Monēmur,</i>	<i>We are advised</i>
<i>monēris or</i>	<i>thou art advised</i>	<i>monemini,</i>	<i>ye are advised</i>
<i>monēre,</i>		<i>monentur,</i>	<i>they are advised.</i>
<i>monētur,</i>	<i>he is advised.</i>		

## FUTURE.

<i>S. Monēbor,</i>	<i>I shall be advised</i>	<i>P. Monēbimur,</i>	<i>We shall</i>
<i>monebēris or</i>	<i>thou wilt be ad-</i>	<i>monebimini,</i>	<i>ye will</i>
<i>monebēre,</i>	<i>vised</i>	<i>monebuntur,</i>	<i>they will</i>
<i>monebitur,</i>	<i>he will be advised.</i>		<i>be advised.</i>

## IMPERFECT.

<i>S. Monēbar,</i>	<i>I was</i>	<i>P. Monēbāmur,</i>	<i>We were</i>
<i>monebāris or</i>	<i>thou wert</i>	<i>monebamini,</i>	<i>ye were</i>
<i>monebāre,</i>		<i>monebantur,</i>	<i>they were</i>
<i>monebatur,</i>	<i>he was</i>		<i>being advised.</i>

## PERFECT.

<i>S. Monitus sum,</i>	<i>I have been, or</i>	<i>P. Moniti</i>	<i>We have been, or</i>
	<i>was advised</i>	<i>sumus,</i>	<i>were advised</i>
<i>monitus es,</i>	<i>thou hast been, or</i>	<i>moniti estis,</i>	<i>ye have been, or</i>
	<i>wast advised</i>		<i>were advised</i>
<i>monitus est,</i>	<i>he has been, or</i>	<i>moniti sunt,</i>	<i>they have been, or</i>
	<i>was advised.</i>		<i>were advised.</i>

## FUTURE PERFECT.

<i>S. Monitus ero,</i>	<i>I shall</i>	<i>P. Moniti</i>	<i>We shall</i>
<i>monitus eris,</i>	<i>thou wilt</i>	<i>erimus,</i>	<i>ye will</i>
<i>monitus erit,</i>	<i>he will</i>	<i>moniti eritis,</i>	<i>they will</i>
	<i>have been</i>	<i>moniti erunt,</i>	<i>have been</i>
	<i>advised.</i>		<i>advised.</i>

## PLUPERFECT.

<i>S. Monitus eram,</i>	<i>I had</i>	<i>P. Moniti eramus,</i>	<i>We had</i>
<i>monitus eras,</i>	<i>thou</i>	<i>moniti eratis,</i>	<i>ye had</i>
	<i>hadst</i>	<i>moniti erant,</i>	<i>they had</i>
<i>monitus erat,</i>	<i>he had</i>		<i>been</i>
	<i>advised.</i>		<i>advised.</i>



IMPERATIVE MOOD.

S. <b>Monēre,</b> <b>monētor,</b> <b>monetor,</b>	} <i>Be thou advised</i> <i>let him be advised.</i>	P. <b>Monēmini,</b> <i>Be ye advised</i> <b>monentor,</b> <i>let them be advised.</i>
---	--	--

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

S. <b>Monear,</b> <b>moneāris</b> or <b>moneāre,</b> <b>moneatur,</b>	} <i>I may</i> <i>thou</i> <i>mayst</i> <i>he may</i>	} <i>be</i> <i>advised.</i>	P. <b>Moneāmur,</b> <i>They may</i> <b>moneamini,</b> <i>ye may</i> <b>moneantur,</b> <i>they may</i>	} <i>be</i> <i>advised.</i>
--	--	--------------------------------	---	--------------------------------

IMPERFECT.

S. <b>Monērer,</b> <b>monerēris</b> or <b>monerēre,</b> <b>moneretur,</b>	} <i>I might</i> <i>thou</i> <i>mightst</i> <i>he might</i>	} <i>be</i> <i>advised.</i>	P. <b>Monerēmur,</b> <i>They might</i> <b>moneremini,</b> <i>ye might</i> <b>monerentur,</b> <i>they might</i>	} <i>be</i> <i>advised.</i>
--	--	--------------------------------	--	--------------------------------

PERFECT.

S. <b>Monītus sim,</b> <b>monitus sis,</b> <b>monitus sit,</b>	} <i>I may</i> <i>thou</i> <i>mayst</i> <i>he may</i>	} <i>have been</i> <i>advised.</i>	P. <b>Moniti simus,</b> <i>We may</i> <b>moniti sitis,</b> <i>ye may</i> <b>moniti sint,</b> <i>they may</i>	} <i>have been</i> <i>advised.</i>
--	--	---------------------------------------	--	---------------------------------------

PLUPERFECT.

S. <b>Monitus essem,</b> <i>I should</i> <b>monitus esses,</b> <i>thou</i> <b>monitus esset,</b> <i>he would</i>	} <i>wouldst</i>	} <i>have been</i> <i>advised.</i>	P. <b>Moniti</b> <b>essemus,</b> } <i>We should</i> <b>moniti essetis,</b> <i>ye would</i> <b>moniti essent,</b> <i>they would</i>	} <i>have been</i> <i>advised.</i>
--	------------------	---------------------------------------	---	---------------------------------------

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT,	<b>Monēri,</b>	<i>to be advised</i>
PERFECT,	<b>monītus esse,</b>	<i>to have been advised</i>
FUTURE,	<b>monitum iri,</b>	<i>to be about to be advised.</i>

PARTICIPLES.

PERFECT,	<b>Monītus,</b>	<i>having been advised</i>
GERUNDIVE,	<b>monendus,</b>	<i>to be advised.</i>

## THIRD CONJUGATION : PASSIVE VOICE

Rēgi, to be ruled.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT TENSE.

<i>S. Regor,</i>	<i>I am ruled</i>	<i>P. Regimur,</i>	<i>We are ruled</i>
<i>regēris</i>	<i>or } thou art ruled</i>	<i>regimini,</i>	<i>ye are ruled</i>
<i>regere,</i>		<i>reguntur,</i>	<i>they are ruled.</i>
<i>regitur,</i>	<i>he is ruled.</i>		

## FUTURE.

<i>S. Regar,</i>	<i>I shall be ruled</i>	<i>P. Regemur,</i>	<i>We shall be ruled</i>
<i>regēris</i>	<i>or } thou wilt be ruled</i>	<i>regimini,</i>	<i>ye will be ruled</i>
<i>regere,</i>		<i>regentur,</i>	<i>they will be ruled.</i>
<i>regetur,</i>	<i>he will be ruled.</i>		

## IMPERFECT.

<i>S. Regēbar,</i>	<i>I was being</i>	<i>P. Regebāmur,</i>	<i>We were being</i>
<i>regebāris</i>	<i>ruled</i>	<i>regebamini,</i>	<i>ruled</i>
<i>regebāre,</i>	<i>or } thou wast being</i>	<i>regebantur,</i>	<i>ye were being</i>
<i>regebatur,</i>	<i>ruled</i>		<i>ruled.</i>
	<i>he was being</i>		<i>they were being</i>
	<i>ruled.</i>		<i>ruled.</i>

## PERFECT.

<i>S. Rectus sum,</i>	<i>I have been</i>	<i>P. Recti sumus,</i>	<i>We have been</i>
	<i>ruled, or was</i>		<i>ruled, or were</i>
	<i>ruled</i>		<i>ruled</i>
<i>rectus es,</i>	<i>thou hast been</i>	<i>recti estis,</i>	<i>ye have been</i>
	<i>ruled, or wast</i>		<i>ruled, or were</i>
	<i>ruled</i>		<i>ruled</i>
<i>rectus est,</i>	<i>he has been</i>	<i>recti sunt,</i>	<i>they have been</i>
	<i>ruled, or was</i>		<i>ruled, or were</i>
	<i>ruled.</i>		<i>ruled.</i>

## FUTURE PERFECT.

<i>S. Rectus ero,</i>	<i>I shall</i>	<i>P. Recti erimus,</i>	<i>We shall</i>
<i>rectus eris,</i>	<i>thou wilt</i>	<i>recti eritis,</i>	<i>ye will</i>
<i>rectus erit,</i>	<i>he will</i>	<i>recti erunt,</i>	<i>they will</i>
	<i>have been ruled.</i>		<i>have been ruled.</i>

## PLUPERFECT.

<i>S. Rectus eram,</i>	<i>I had</i>	<i>P. Recti eramus,</i>	<i>We</i>
<i>rectus eras,</i>	<i>thou hadst</i>	<i>recti eratis,</i>	<i>ye</i>
<i>rectus erat,</i>	<i>he had</i>	<i>recti erant,</i>	<i>they</i>
	<i>been ruled.</i>		<i>had been ruled.</i>

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

S. Regere, } regitor, } regitor, }	Be ye ruled let him be ruled.	P. Regimini, reguntor,	Be ye ruled let them be ruled.
--	----------------------------------	---------------------------	-----------------------------------

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

S. Regar, } regaris or } regare, } regatur, }	I may thou mayst he may	} be ruled.	P. Regamur, regamini, regantur,	We may ye may they may	} be ruled.
--	-------------------------------	-------------	---------------------------------------	------------------------------	-------------

IMPERFECT.

S. Regerer, } regereris or } regerere, } regeretur, }	I might thou mightst he might	} be ruled.	P. Regeremur, regeremini, regerentur,	We might ye might they might	} be ruled.
--	--	-------------	---	------------------------------------	-------------

PERFECT.

S. Rectus } sim, } rectus } sis, } rectus } sit, }	I may thou mayst he may	} have been ruled.	P. Recti } simus, } recti } sitis, } recti } sint, }	We may ye may they may	} have been ruled.
---	-------------------------------	--------------------	---	------------------------------	--------------------

PLUPERFECT.

S. Rectus } essem, } rectus } esses, } rectus } esset, }	I should thou wouldst he would	} have been ruled.	P. Recti } essemus, } recti } essetis, } recti } essent, }	We should ye would they would	} have been ruled.
---	--------------------------------------	--------------------	---	-------------------------------------	--------------------

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT,	Rēgi,	to be ruled
PERFECT,	rectus esse,	to have been ruled
FUTURE,	rectum iri,	to be about to be ruled.

PARTICIPLES.

PERF., Rectus, having been ruled. | GERUN., Regendus, to be ruled.

## FOURTH CONJUGATION : PASSIVE VOICE

## Audiri, to be heard.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT TENSE.

<i>S. Audior,</i>	<i>I am heard</i>	<i>P. Audimur,</i>	<i>We are heard</i>
<i>audiris or</i>	} <i>thou art heard</i>	<i>audimini,</i>	<i>ye are heard</i>
<i>audire,</i>		<i>audiuntur,</i>	<i>they are heard.</i>
<i>auditur,</i>	<i>he is heard.</i>		

## FUTURE.

<i>S. Audiar,</i>	<i>I shall be heard</i>	<i>P. Audiēmur,</i>	<i>We shall be heard</i>
<i>audiēris or</i>	} <i>thou wilt be</i>	<i>audiēmīni,</i>	<i>ye will be heard</i>
<i>audiēre,</i>		<i>audientur,</i>	<i>they will be heard.</i>
<i>audietur,</i>	<i>he will be heard.</i>		

## IMPERFECT.

<i>S. Audiēbar,</i>	<i>I was being</i>	<i>P. Audiēbāmur,</i>	<i>We were being</i>
	<i>heard</i>		<i>heard</i>
<i>audiebāris or</i>	} <i>thou wast being</i>	<i>audiebamini,</i>	<i>ye were being</i>
<i>audiebāre,</i>			<i>heard</i>
<i>audiebatur,</i>	<i>he was being</i>	<i>audiebantur,</i>	<i>they were being</i>
	<i>heard.</i>		<i>heard.</i>

## PERFECT.

<i>S. Auditus sum,</i>	<i>I have been</i>	<i>P. Auditi sumus,</i>	<i>We have been</i>
	<i>heard, or was</i>		<i>heard, or were</i>
	<i>heard</i>		<i>heard</i>
<i>auditus es,</i>	<i>thou hast been</i>	<i>auditi estis,</i>	<i>ye have been</i>
	<i>heard, or wast</i>		<i>heard, or were</i>
	<i>heard</i>		<i>heard</i>
<i>auditus est,</i>	<i>he has been</i>	<i>auditi sunt,</i>	<i>they have been</i>
	<i>heard, or was</i>		<i>heard, or were</i>
	<i>heard.</i>		<i>heard.</i>

## FUTURE PERFECT.

<i>S. Auditus ero,</i>	<i>I shall</i>	<i>P. Auditi erimus,</i>	<i>We shall</i>
<i>auditus eris,</i>	} <i>have</i>	<i>auditi eritis,</i>	} <i>have</i>
<i>auditus erit,</i>		<i>auditi erunt,</i>	
	<i>been</i>		<i>been</i>
	<i>heard.</i>		<i>heard.</i>

## PLUPERFECT.

<i>S. Auditus eram,</i>	<i>I had</i>	<i>P. Auditi eramus,</i>	<i>We</i>
<i>auditus eras,</i>	} <i>been</i>	<i>auditi eratis,</i>	} <i>had been</i>
<i>auditus erat,</i>		<i>auditi erant,</i>	
	<i>heard.</i>		<i>heard.</i>

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

<i>S. Audire,</i>	} <i>Be thou heard</i>	<i>P. Audimīni,</i>	<i>Be ye heard</i>
<i>auditor,</i>			
<i>auditor,</i>		<i>audiuntor,</i>	<i>let them be heard.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

<i>S. Audiar,</i>	} <i>I may be heard</i>	<i>P. Audiāmur,</i>	<i>We may be heard</i>
<i>audiāris or</i>			
<i>audiāre,</i>		<i>audiamini,</i>	<i>ye may be heard</i>
<i>audiatur,</i>	<i>he may be heard.</i>	<i>audiantur,</i>	<i>they may be heard.</i>

IMPERFECT.

<i>S. Audirer,</i>	} <i>I might be heard</i>	<i>P. Audirēmur,</i>	<i>We might be heard</i>
<i>audirēris or</i>			
<i>audirēre,</i>		<i>audiremini,</i>	<i>ye might be heard</i>
<i>audiretur,</i>	<i>he might be heard.</i>	<i>audirentur,</i>	<i>they might be heard.</i>

PERFECT.

<i>S. Auditus sim,</i>	} <i>I may have been heard</i>	<i>P. Auditi simus,</i>	<i>We may have been heard</i>
<i>auditus sis,</i>		<i>auditi sitis,</i>	<i>ye may have been heard</i>
<i>auditus sit,</i>		<i>auditi sint,</i>	<i>they may have been heard.</i>

PLUPERFECT.

<i>S. Auditus essem,</i>	} <i>I should have been heard</i>	<i>P. Auditi essemus,</i>	<i>We should have been heard</i>
<i>auditus esses,</i>		<i>auditi essetis,</i>	<i>ye would have been heard</i>
<i>auditus esset,</i>		<i>auditi essent,</i>	<i>they would have been heard.</i>

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT,	<b>Audiri,</b>	<i>to be heard</i>
PERF. and PLUP.,	<b>auditus esse,</b>	<i>to have been heard</i>
FUTURE,	<b>auditum iri,</b>	<i>to be about to be heard.</i>

PARTICIPLES.

PERFECT,	<b>Auditus,</b>	<i>having been heard.</i>
GERUNDIVE,	<b>audiendus,</b>	<i>to be heard.</i>



# VOCABULARIES TO THE FIRST FOUR PIECES OF TRANSLATION.

## I.—A LETTER, p. 12.

[The words are given in the order in which they come in English.]

fuit, *was*.  
 jucundus, *pleasant*.  
 mihi, *to me*.  
 nam, *for*.  
 scribit, *he writes*.  
 filius, *son*.  
 industrius, *industrious*.  
 māter, *mother*.  
 mittit, *sends*.  
 tibi, *to you*.  
 praemium, *as a reward*.

söror, *sister*.  
 sex, *six*.  
 annus, *year*.  
 rögat, *she asks*.  
 me, *me*.  
 quando, *when*.  
 pater, *father*.  
 frater, *brother*.  
 revertet, *will return*.  
 vale, *farewell, good-bye*.

## II.—ROMULUS AND REMUS, p. 12.

[The words are given in the order in which they come in English.]

dum, *while*.  
 aedificat, *is building*.  
 murus, *wall*.  
 Roma, *Rome*.  
 impröbus, *wicked*.  
 transsilit, *jumps over*.  
 adhuc, *as yet*.  
 parvus, *small*.  
 compellat, *addresses*.  
 contumeliösus, *insolent*.  
 verbum, *word*.  
 carissimus, *dearest*.

quam, *how*.  
 magnificus, *magnificent*.  
 arcent, *they keep off*.  
 inimicus, *enemy*.  
 egregie, *splendidly*.  
 autem, *but*.  
 ira, *anger*.  
 occidit, *kills*.  
 tum, *then*.  
 conficit, *he finishes*.  
 feliciter, *happily*.

III.—THE BLACK SLAVE, p. 13.

[The words are given as they come in the Latin.]

Agrippa (a name).  
 niger, *black*.  
 servum, *slave*.  
 habēbat, *had*.  
 platēa, *street*.  
 rident, *laugh at*.  
 en ! *see !*  
 clamant, *they shout*.  
 quam ! *how !*  
 nemo, *nobody*.  
 te, *you*.  
 lavat, *wash*.  
 tāmen, *however*.

validus, *strong*.  
 audit, *hears*.  
 capillus, *hair*.  
 arripit, *he seizes*.  
 frustra, *in vain*.  
 lacrima, *a tear*.  
 fundunt, *they shed*.  
 cunctus, *all*.  
 sine, *without*.  
 mora, *delay*.  
 in, *into*.  
 atramentum, *ink*.  
 demergit, *dips*.

IV.—A FABLE, p. 17.

[The words are given in alphabetical order.]

animal, *animal*.  
 arrogat, *claims (unjustly)*.  
 capiunt, *they take*.  
 capra, *a goat*.  
 comportant, *they bring it together*.  
 denique, *lastly*.  
 dividunt, *they divide*.  
 equus, *a horse*.  
 erit, *he will be*.  
 fames, *hunger*.  
 imbecillus, *weak*.  
 inquit, *(he) says*.  
 jungunt, *form*.  
 labor, *labour*.  
 leo, *a lion*.  
 locus, *place*.  
 major, *greater*.  
 ovis, *a sheep*.

partem (acc. sing. of pars), *part*.  
 partes (acc. plur. of pars), *parts*.  
 praeda, *booty*.  
 primus, *first*.  
 propter, *on account of*.  
 quam, *than*.  
 quartus, *fourth*.  
 quattuor, *four*.  
 quoniam, *since*.  
 secundus, *second*.  
 sibi, *for himself*.  
 si quis, *if anybody, whoever*.  
 societas, *a company*.  
 tertius, *third*.  
 unus, *one*.  
 vindico, *I claim (justly)*.  
 vobis, *to you*.

# LATIN-ENGLISH DICTIONARY

TO THE

## EXERCISES AND TRANSLATION.

Obs. 1. *Words that occur in the Exercises are printed in thicker type. (Many of these occur also in the Translation.)*

Obs. 2. *A figure after a word denotes the declension or conjugation to which it belongs.*

### A

**a, ab**, *by or from* (with abl.); it is not used for *by* before things; see p. 15.

**abdit**, (*he*) *hides*.

**abest**, *is absent*; **absunt**, *are absent*; from **absum**.

**accēdo** (3), *I approach*.

**accurrunt**, (*they*) *run up*.

**acer**, *acris*, *acre* (gen. *acris*, abl. *acri*), *fierce, keen, spirited*.

**acerrimus**, *the bitterest*.

**acies**, *battle, line of battle*.

**acri**, abl. sing. of **acer** (above).

**acris** (see **acer**).

**acriter** (adverb), *keenly, fiercely*.

**acuo** (perf. **acui**), *I sharpen*.

**acūtus**, *sharp*.

**ad** (with acc.), *to, towards, for, against*. It translates to only when "motion to" is meant, e.g. *to the city*, *ad urbem*. But before names of towns the accusative without *ad* is used, e.g. *to Rome*, *Romam*.

### A

**adducuntur**, (*they*) *are led*.

**adduxit** (perf. of **addūco**), (*he*) *led up, tempted*.

**adest**, *is here, is upon us*.

**adeunt**, (*they*) *are coming, approach*.

**adfectus**, a, um, *moved, touched*.

**adferre**, *to bring*.

**adflātu** (abl. sing. of **adflatus**), *breath*.

**ad īmum** (collem), *to the bottom (of the hill)*.

**adjutor**, *helper*; *Deo adjutore*, *God being my helper*.

**admōvent**, (*they*) *move up*.

**adnuī**, (*he*) *nods to, beckons*.

**adstat**, (*he*) *stands by*.

**adsto** (1), *I stand by*.

**adsum**, *I am present*; with dat., *I help*.

**adulescens**, *a youth*.

**advēniunt**, (*they*) *are coming up, come up*.

**adventus** (4), *arrival*.

**adverso colle**, *up-hill*.

A

**adversus**, *adverse*; **res adversae**, *adversity, trouble*.

**adversus** (preposition with acc.), *against*.

**aedificat**, (*he*) *builds*; **aedificant**, (*they*) *build*.

**aedificavit**, (*he*) *built*.

**aedificium**, *a building*.

**Aegyptius**, *Egyptian*.

**aes aliĕnum**, *debt* (literally, *other people's money*).

**aestas** (gen. *aestĕtis*), *summer*.

**ager** (gen. *agri*), *field, land*.

**agger** (gen. *aggĕris*), *rampart, mound*.

**ĕgit**, (*he*) *is doing, (he) does*; *vitam ago*, *I spend (my) life*.

**agitĕtus**, *tossed*.

**agmen** (gen. *agmĭnis*), *army*.

**ais**, *you say*.

**albus**, *white*.

**Alexander** (gen. *Alexandri*), *Alexander*.

**alii**, *others*.

**alioquin**, *otherwise*.

**aliquando**, *some day, once upon a time*.

**aliquot**, *some few*.

**alius**, *a, um, other* (p. 70); **alii** — **alii**, *some—others*.

**allĭgat**, (*he*) *ties, binds*.

**alligĕtus**, *bound*.

**alter** (see p. 72), *the other* (of two), *another, a second*.

**altĕrum** (neut. nom. sing. of *alter*).

**altus**, *high*.

**alvus** (2), *belly*.

**amans** (acc. sing. *amantem*), *loving*.

**amat**, (*he*) *loves*; **amant**, (*they*) *love*; **amatur**, (*he*) *is loved*; **amantur**, (*they*) *are loved*.

**amicus** (2), *friend*.

**amitto** (3), *I lose*.

**amittunt**, (*they*) *lose*.

A

**amor** (gen. *amĕris*), *love*.

**amĕveo** (2), *I move away*.

**an**, *or*.

**ancilla**, *maid, servant-girl*.

**animal** (gen. *animĕlis*, neut.), *animal*.

**animus** (2), *mind, heart*.

**annus** (2), *year*.

**ante** (adverb), *before*; (or preposition with acc.,) *before*; **ante Christum natum**, *before the birth of Christ* (our B.C. in dates).

**antea** (adverb), *before*.

**antiqui**, *the ancients*.

**antiquus**, *ancient, old*.

**aperio**, *I impart, disclose*.

**apĕrit**, (*he*) *imparts*.

**appĕret**, (*he*) *appears*.

**appello** (3), *I put in* (*a ship to shore*).

**apud** (with acc.), *by, near*; **apud plebem**, *before the people*.

**aqua**, *water*.

**arbor** (gen. *arbĕris*), *a tree*.

**arbustum**, *a shrub*.

**arcus** (gen. *arcĕs*), *bow*.

**area**, *court, courtyard*.

**argentum**, *silver*.

**aries** (gen. *ariĕtis*), *a ram*.

**arma** (plur.), *arms* (*of a soldier*).

**armĕtus**, *a, um, armed*.

**arrĭpit**, (*he*) *snatches up, seizes*.

**arripiunt**, (*they*) *snatch up*.

**ars** (gen. *artis*), *art*.

**assiduus**, *assiduous, continual*.

**at**, *but*.

**Athĕnis**, *at Athens*.

**Attĭcus** (adjective), *belonging to Attica, of Attica*.

**attingere**, *to reach*.

**attĕnitus**, *a, um, astonished*.

**audĕcia**, *daring*.

**audax** (gen. *audĕcis*, p. 37), *daring*.

## A

audeo, *I dare*.  
 audit, (*he*) *hears*.  
 audiunt, (*they*) *hear*.  
 aureus, *golden*.  
 auris (gen. auris), *ear*.  
 aurum, *gold*.  
 aut, *or*; aut—aut, *either—or*.  
 autem, *however*.  
 auxilium, *help*.  
 Aventinus, a, um, *Mons Aventinus, The Aventine Hill*  
 (one of the seven hills of Rome).  
 avis (gen. avis), *bird*.

## B

baculum, *a staff*.  
 Bagradas (acc. Bagradam), *a river in Northern Africa*.  
 ballista, *engine* (of war, *a huge bow for throwing stones in sieges*).  
 barba, *beard*.  
 barbarus, *a barbarian*.  
 bene, adv., *well*.  
 benigne, *kindly*.  
 bibo (3), *I drink*; perf. bibi, imperative bibe.  
 bonus, *good*; melior, *better*; optimus, *best*.  
 brevis, breve (abl. brevi), *short*.

## C

caelum, *sky*.  
 caeruleus, *blue*.  
 calcar (gen. calcaris, neut.), *spur*.  
 Caledonia, now *Scotland*.  
 calix (gen. calicis, masc.), *a cup*.  
 callide, *cleverly*.  
 callidus, *clever*.  
 calo (gen. calonis), *a camp-follower*.  
 camelus, *a camel*.  
 campus, *a plain*.

## C

candens (gen. candentis), *burning*.  
 canis, *a dog*.  
 canit, (*he*) *sings*; canunt, (*they*) *sing*.  
 Cantium, *Kent*.  
 capax (gen. capacis), *capacious*.  
 capere, *to take*.  
 capere terram, *to make the land*.  
 capillus (2), *hair*.  
 capio, *I take, form, adopt*; insulam capiunt, *they make (i.e. arrive at) the island*.  
 captivus, *a captive, prisoner*.  
 captus, *having been taken, captured*.  
 caput (gen. capitis, neut.), *head, capital*.  
 carcer (gen. carceris), *prison*.  
 carmen (gen. carminis, neut.), *song*.  
 caro (gen. carnis), *flesh*.  
 carpunt, (*they*) *harass*.  
 carus, *dear*.  
 caseus, *cheese*.  
 castellum, *a fort, castle*.  
 castra (2, plur.), *a camp*.  
 catapulta, *a catapult* (on a large scale: used by the Romans in sieges).  
 catena, *a fetter*.  
 cauda, *tail*.  
 celer, celeris, celere (p. 38), *quick*.  
 celeritas, celeritatis, *speed*.  
 celeriter, *quickly*.  
 cena, *dinner*.  
 ceno (1), *I dine*.  
 centum (indeclinable), *hundred*.  
 certamen, *a struggle, combat*.  
 certo (adverb), *certainly, assuredly*.  
 certus, *certain, sure*; certiore (-es) facit, (*he*) *informs*.  
 ceteri, *the rest*.  
 cibus, *food*.



C

**Cicero** (gen. Cicerōnis), a Roman orator and statesman.  
**cingunt**, (*they*) surround.  
**circa** (with acc.), around.  
**circiter**, about.  
**circumdat**, (*he*) surrounds; **circumdant**, (*they*) surround; **circumdatur**, is surrounded.  
**circumstat**, stands around.  
**civis** (gen. civis), citizen.  
**civitas** (gen. civitātis), state.  
**clādes** (gen. cladis), defeat.  
**clam**, secretly.  
**clamans** (gen. clamantis), shouting out, calling out.  
**clamantes**, nom. or acc. plur. of clamans.  
**clāmo** (1), I shout.  
**clamor** (gen. clamōris), shout, shouting.  
**clarus**, clear, celebrated.  
**classis** (gen. classis), fleet.  
**claudio** (3), I shut.  
**claudus**, lame.  
**clīpeus**, shield.  
**cognosco**, I recognise, know.  
**collis** (gen. collis, masc.), hill.  
**collōcat**, (*he*) places, stations, posts.  
**collocātus**, placed.  
**collōco** (1), I post.  
**color** (gen. colōris), colour.  
**comae** (plur.), hair.  
**comes** (gen. comitis), companion.  
**committitur**, is begun.  
**commōtus**, moved.  
**compārat**, (*he*) prepares, gets together.  
**compes** (gen. compēdis), fetter, shackle (*for the feet*).  
**comprehendunt**, (*they*) seize.  
**conclāve** (gen. conclāvis, neut.), a room.  
**confectus**, a, um, worn.  
**confestim** (adverb), hurriedly.

C

**conficiunt**, (*they*) finish.  
**confligo** (3), I fight.  
**confodiunt**, (*they*) stab.  
**conjiciunt**, (*they*) throw (*with force*).  
**conjūrant**, (*they*) conspire.  
**conjūro** (1), I conspire.  
**conscendo** (3), I climb; with navem, I embark.  
**consilium**, meeting, plan.  
**conspicit**, (*he*) sees, observes.  
**conspiciunt**, (*they*) see, observe.  
**constitui** (perf. of constituo).  
**constituo** (3), I determine.  
**consul** (gen. consūlis), consul (a Roman magistrate).  
**contemno** (3), I despise.  
**contendit**, he went off.  
**contentus**, content, satisfied.  
**conterritus**, a, um, very frightened.  
**continentes**, continuous.  
**contra** (adverb), on the other hand.  
**contumeliōsus**, insulting.  
**conturbātis nostris**, our men having been thrown into confusion.  
**convēnire**, to assemble.  
**conviva**, guest.  
**convivium**, an entertainment.  
**convoco** (1), I call together.  
**convortit**, (*he*) turns.  
**convortuntur**, are turned.  
**cōpia**, a supply.  
**copiae**, forces.  
**corium**, skin.  
**cornu** (abl. cornu), horn, wing (*of an army*).  
**corōna** (1), chaplet, wreath, crown.  
**corpus** (gen. corpōris), body.  
**corripit**, (*he*) seizes.  
**corticeus**, cork, made of cork.  
**cotīdie**, every day.  
**cras** (adverb), to-morrow.  
**crātes** (gen. cratis), a hurdle.

## C

**creber**, crebra, crebrum, frequent.  
**credo** (perf. credīdi, with dative),  
*I believe, I fancy.*  
**Crēta**, Crete.  
**crinis** (gen. crinis), hair.  
**cruciatur**, he is tortured.  
**crudēlis**, cruel; **crudelis** in,  
*cruel to.*  
**crudelitas**, crudelitātis, cruelty.  
**crus** (gen. crūris, neut.), leg.  
**culpat**, (he) blames; **culpant**,  
*(they) blame.*  
**culter** (gen. cultri), knife.  
**cum** (with abl.), along with.  
**cupio** (perf. cupivi), I wish,  
*desire.*  
**cura**, care; **curae esse**, to be (for)  
*a care.*  
**currit**, (he) runs.  
**cursus** (gen. cursūs), course.  
**Cyclops** (gen. Cyclōpis), one of  
the Cyclōpes, the name of  
some giants.

## D

**dat**, (he) gives; **dant**, (they) give;  
**datur**, is given; **dantur**, are  
given.  
**dātur**, is being given.  
**de** (with certiorē facit, of),  
from, about.  
**debeo**, I ought, owe.  
**December**, bris, bre, December  
(adj. agreeing with mensis).  
**decidit**, (he) falls down; **decidunt**,  
(they) fall down, fall  
off.  
**dēdi**, perfect of dare, I gave.  
**dēditus**, a, um, given up, de-  
voted (from dedo).  
**deflexit**, (he) turned aside.  
**dēinde** (two syllables), then, next.  
**dejicit**, (he) throws down, casts.

## D

**delectat**, (he) delights, pleases,  
charms; **delectant**, (they)  
delight; **delectatur**, is de-  
lighted; **delectantur**, are  
delighted.  
**delibēro** (1), I deliberate, con-  
sider.  
**deligit**, (he) chooses out.  
**delphines** (acc. plur.), dolphins.  
**dēmum**, at length.  
**dēnique**, lastly.  
**dens** (gen. dentis), tooth.  
**densus**, thick.  
**depōno** (3), I lay aside, put away.  
**desērit**, (he) deserts.  
**desertum**, a desert.  
**despēro** (1), I despair.  
**Deus** (2), God.  
**devolvitur**, it is rolled down, it  
rolls down.  
**devōro** (1), I devour.  
**dexter**, dextra, dextrum, right;  
dextrā, on the right hand.  
**dicēre**, to say, to plead.  
**dico** (3), I say, I tell.  
**die**, abl. sing. of dies.  
**diebus**, abl. plur. of dies.  
**dies** (5, masc.), day.  
**difficilis**, e, difficult (superl. diffi-  
cillimus).  
**digītus** (2), finger.  
**dilapsus**, a, um, disappearing,  
gliding away.  
**diligentia** (1), diligence, in-  
dustry.  
**dimitto** (3), I dismiss.  
**dissimilis**, e, unlike (superf. dis-  
simillimus).  
**diu** (adverb), for a long time;  
diutius, for a longer time;  
diutissime, for a very long  
time.  
**diversus**, different.  
**dives** (gen. divitis), rich.  
**divinus**, divine, godlike.

D

**divitiae**, *riches.*  
**dixit** (from dico), *he said.*  
**do** (1), *I give*; perf. dēdi; da, *give!*  
**dolor** (gen. dolōris), *grief, pain.*  
**domare**, *to tame, subdue.*  
**dominatio** (gen. dominationis), *rule, tyranny.*  
**domum**, (to) *home.*  
**domus** (see p. 44, fem.), *house.*  
**dormio** (4), *I sleep.*  
**ducit**, (he) *leads*; ducunt, (they) *lead.*  
**duco** (3), *I lead.*  
**dulcis**, e, *sweet, pleasant.*  
**dum**, *while.*  
**duo** (see p. 54), *two.*  
**duodeviginti**, *eighteen.*  
**dux** (gen. dūcis), *leader, general.*

E

e, ex (with abl.), *from, out of.*  
e proximo, *from quite near.*  
**educit**, (he) *leads out, draws out*;  
**educunt**, (they) *lead out*;  
**educitur**, *is led out.*  
**efficit**, (he) *makes.*  
**effigiem** (acc. of effigies), *figure, ghost.*  
**effodit**, (he) *digs up, digs out.*  
**ego** (p. 63), *I.*  
**egrēgius**, *remarkable, extraordinary.*  
**elidit**, (he) *crushes.*  
**eligo** (3), *I choose out.*  
**emit** (he) *bought.*  
**emitto** (3), *I send out.*  
**en**, see! *behold!*  
**enim**, *for.*  
**eorum** (gen. plur. of is), *of them, their.*  
**eos** (acc. plur. of is), *them.*  
**epistūla**, *letter.*  
**epūlae**, *a banquet.*

E

**ēques** (gen. equitis), *a horse-man; equites, cavalry.*  
**equus** (2), *horse.*  
**erat**, *was.*  
**ergo**, *therefore, then.*  
**eripio** (3), *I snatch out, escape.*  
**errat**, (he) *wanders.*  
**error** (gen. errōris), *wandering.*  
**erūdio**, *I teach.*  
**et**, *and*; **et—et**, *both—and.*  
**etiam**, *also.*  
**Etrusci**, *the Etruscans.*  
**ex** (with abl.), *from*; ex hac parte, *on this side.*  
**excaeco** (1), *I blind.*  
**excēdit**, (he) *goes out*; excedat, *let him go out, depart.*  
**excidium**, *overthrow.*  
**excipiuntur**, (they) *are received.*  
**exclāmat**, (he) *calls out, exclaims.*  
**exercitus** (4), *army.*  
**exiguus**, *small, insignificant.*  
**exit**, (he) *goes out*; exeunt, (they) *go out.*  
**expōno** (3), *I put out.*  
**expūlit**, (he) *expelled, drove out.*  
**expulsus**, *having been expelled.*  
**expectat**, (he) *awaits*; **expectant**, (they) *await.*  
**exsurgunt**, (they) *rise up.*  
**extra** (with acc.), *outside.*  
**extrēmus**, *extreme.*  
**exuo** (3), *I take off.*

F

**facētus**, *witty, facetious.*  
**facies**, *face.*  
**facilis**, e, *easy* (superl. facillimus).  
**facinus** (gen. facinōris), *deed, crime.*  
**fācio**, *I make, do*; feci, *I have made*; factus, *having been made.*

## F

**fācit**, (*he*) *makes* ; **faciunt** (*they*)  
*make* ; **certiorem facit**, (*he*)  
*informs*.

**facultas** (gen. *facultātis*), *a chance*.

**facundus**, *eloquent*.

**fama**, *report*.

**fāmes**, *hunger*.

**fēci** (perf. of *facio*), *I made*.

**feliciter**, *happily, successfully*.

**femīna**, *a woman*.

**fēra**, *a wild beast*.

**fere**, *almost*.

**ferox** (gen. *ferōcis*), *fierce, proud*.

**ferrum**, *iron, dagger, sword*.

**fert**, (*he*) *brings, carries*.

**fērus**, *fierce, wild*.

**fervens** (gen. *ferventis*), *red-hot*.

**fessus**, *tired*.

**filia**, *daughter* (the first *i* in *filia*  
 and *filius* is long).

**filius**, *son*.

**filum**, *a thread*.

**finis** (gen. *finis*, masc.), *end* ;  
**fines**, *boundaries, territory*.

**firmus**, *firm*.

**flamma**, *flame*.

**flavus**, *golden*.

**flexuōsus** (adjective), *winding*.

**flexūra**, *winding, turn*.

**floreus**, *flowery, made of flowers*.

**flos** (gen. *flōris*), *flower*.

**fluctus** (4), *wave*.

**fluēre**, *to flow*.

**flumen** (gen. *flumīnis*), *river*.

**foedus** (gen. *foedēris*), *treaty*.

**foedus** (adj.), *hideous, gloomy*.

**foris** (adverb), *out of doors*.

**forte** (adverb), *by chance, as it*  
*happened*.

**fortis** (abl. plur., *fortibus*), *strong,*  
*brave*.

**fortiter**, *bravely* ; comp. **fortius**,  
*more bravely* ; superl. **for-**  
**tissime**, *very bravely*.

**fovea**, *a pit*.

## F

**frāter** (gen. sing., *fratris* ; gen.  
 plur., *fratrum*), *brother*.

**fremēre**, *to roar*.

**frigus** (gen. *frigōris*), *cold*.

**frons** (gen. *frontis*), *front, fore-*  
*head*.

**frumentum**, *corn*.

**frustra**, *in vain*.

**fuga**, *flight*.

**fugo**, (1) *I put to flight*.

**fugit**, (*he*) *flies, escapes*.

**fugiunt**, (*they*) *fly, escape*.

**fuit**, *was*.

**fulgur** (gen. *fulgūris*), *lightning* ;  
**fulgura**, *flashes of lightning*.

**funda**, *a sling*.

**fundo** (3), *I rout*.

## G

**galea**, *helmet*.

**Gallīcus**, *Gallic, belonging to the*  
*Gauls*.

**gelīdus**, *cold*.

**gemītus**, *groaning*.

**gens** (gen. *gentis*), *tribe, nation*.

**gentes** (plur. of *gens*), *nation,*  
*tribe*.

**gēnus** (gen. *genēris*), *a kind*.

**gerit**, *he carries, wears*.

**Germānus**, *a German, German*.

**gēro**, *I carry, wear* ; **bellum**  
*gerēre*, *to wage war*.

**gigantes**, *giants*.

**gladius**, *a sword*.

**gloria**, *glory*.

**gloriōsus**, *glorious*.

**Graeci**, *the Greeks*.

**Graecūlus**, *a little Greek*.

**gradus** (gen. *gradūs*), *a step*.

**grāmen** (gen. *gramīnis*), *grass*.

**grātus**, *welcome, pleasant, pleas-*  
*ing* ; **gratus** in te, *thankful*  
*to (towards) you*.

**grāvis**, e, *heavy, deep*.



H

**habeo** ; orationem habēre, *to deliver a speech* ; consilium habēre, *to hold counsel, to hold a meeting.*  
**habet**, (he) *has, keeps* ; **habent**, (they) *have, keep* ; **habētur**, *is considered.*  
**habitabat**, *lived.*  
**habito** (1), *I inhabit.*  
**hanc** (sing. acc. fem. of hic), *this.*  
**hasta**, *a spear.*  
**haud multum**, *not much.*  
**haustus** (4), *a draught, a drink.*  
**heus** ! *Ho !*  
**hiems** (gen. hiēmis), *winter.*  
**hic** (abl. plur. of hic), *these.*  
**Hispānia**, *Spain.*  
**hodie** (adv.) *to-day.*  
**homo** (gen. hominis), *a man.*  
**honoravisti**, *you have honoured, done honour to.*  
**hora**, *hour.*  
**horribile** (from horribilis), *horrible.*  
**horridus**, *matted (hair).*  
**hortus** (2), *garden.*  
**hospes** (gen. hospitis), *a guest.*  
**hostis** (gen. hostis) *an enemy* ; **hostes**, *the enemy.*  
**huc** (adv.), *hither.*  
**humanissimi**, *the most civilised.*  
**humānus**, *human.*  
**humus** (2, fem.), *ground, earth.*

I

**ibat**, (he) *was going, walking.*  
**ibi** (adv.), *there.*  
**idem** (see p. 67), *the same.*  
**igitur**, *therefore.*  
**ignārus**, *ignorant.*  
**ignis** (gen. ignis), *fire.*  
**ignōro** (1), *I am ignorant of, do not know.*

I

**ille** (nom. sing. fem. illa, gen. sing. illius, acc. plur. fem. illas ; see p. 65), *that.*  
**illo** (sing. abl. masc. or neut. of ille), *that.*  
**illo** (adv.), *thither, to that place.*  
**imāgo** (gen. imaginis, fem.), *image, likeness.*  
**imber** (gen. imbris), *a shower of rain.*  
**imberbis**, *beardless.*  
**imbuit**, *dyes.*  
**immēmōr** (gen. immemōris), *unmindful, forgetful.*  
**impēdit capiti**, *overhangs his head.*  
**imperātor**, *general (in V.), emperor.*  
**imperium**, *rule.*  
**impētus** (4), *charge, rush.*  
**impiger**, **impigra**, **impigrum**, *active, energetic.*  
**impleo** (perf. implēvi), *I fill.*  
**implicitus**, a, um, *enveloped.*  
**implōrant**, (they) *entreat for.*  
**implōro** (1), *I entreat for.*  
**impōsitus**, *set, perched.*  
**impūdēns**, *impudent, shameless.*  
**īmus**, *lowest* ; **ad imum** (collem), *to the bottom (of the hill).*  
**in**, with abl., *in, on* ; with acc., *into, on to, against.*  
**inauditus**, *unheard of.*  
**incertus**, *uncertain.*  
**incēdit**, (he) *falls into* ; **incidunt**, (they) *fall into.*  
**incitat**, (he) *urges on* ; **incitant**, (they) *urge on.*  
**incitātis equis**, *their horses having been urged on* ; (with their horses at a gallop).  
**incōla**, *an inhabitant.*  
**incōlo** (3), *I inhabit* ; **incolunt**, (they) *inhabit.*  
**incultus**, *uncivilised.*



## I

incursio (gen. incursiōnis), *assault, inroad*.  
 inducuntur, *are led on*.  
 infensus, a, um, *enraged, furious*.  
 inficiunt, *(they) dye*.  
 infigo (3), *I thrust in, dig in*.  
 infinitus, *infinite, innumerable*.  
**ingens** (gen. ingentis, abl. ingenti, nom. plur. neut., ingentia), *huge*.  
 ingratus, *ungrateful*.  
 in his, *among them*.  
 init, *(he) forms*.  
 iniquus, *unfavourable*.  
 injicit, *(he) throws over, thrusts*.  
 inquit, *(he) says*.  
 insidiae, *snare*.  
 instat, *approaches, is almost come*.  
**instruo** (3), *I draw up*.  
 insula, *island*.  
 insuper, *on the top*.  
 intelligit, *(he) knows of, understands*.  
 intentus (adjective), *intent*.  
 inter (with acc.), *among, between*.  
 interdum (adverb), *sometimes*.  
**interficio**, *I kill*; **interficere**, *to kill*; **interficiunt**, *(they) kill*; **interficitur**, *he is killed, put to death*; (perf. interfēci).  
 interrogo (1), *I ask, question*.  
 intra (with acc.), *within, inside*.  
 intrat, *(he enters)*.  
 intrudo (3, perf. intrusi), *I thrust in*.  
 intus (adverb), *within*.  
 invēnio, *I find*; invēni, *I have found, I found*; inveniuntur, *(they) are found*.  
 invisus, *hateful*.  
 invito (1), *I invite*.  
**ipse** (see p. 68), *himself, etc.*  
 ipse se interficit, *he (himself) kills himself*.  
 irātus, *angry, enraged*.

## I

irruunt, *(they) rush on*.  
 is (gen. ejus, p. 66), *this; he, she, it*.  
**iste** (see p. 68), *that (of yours)*.  
 ita, *so*.  
**Italia**, *Italy*.  
 itaque, *so*.  
 iter (neut.), *way*; iter facit, *he marches*.  
**itērum**, *again*; **iterum atque iterum**, *again and again*.

## J

jacent, *(they) lie*.  
**jacio** (perf. jēci), *I throw*.  
**jam**, *already*.  
 janua, *door (of a house)*.  
**jubeo** (perf. jussi), *I order*.  
**jubet**, *(he) orders*.  
 jucundus, *pleasant*.  
 judicium, *a trial*.  
 jussa, *orders*.  
 jussus (gen. jussūs), *order, command*.  
**juvēnis** (gen. sing. juvenis, gen. plur. juvenum), *a young man*.  
 juvenus (gen. juventūtis, fem.), *youth*.

## L

labor (gen. labōris, acc. laborem), *toil, labour*.  
 labrum, *lip*.  
 labyrinthus, *labyrinth, maze*.  
**lac** (gen. lactis), *milk*.  
 lacero (1), *I tear apart, in pieces*.  
 lacrima, *a tear*.  
 laetus, *happy, joyful*; laeti inveniunt, *are delighted to find*.  
 lapis (gen. lapīdis, masc.), *a stone*.  
 lātus (gen. latēris), *side, flank*.  
 lātus, *wide*.

L

**laudat**, (*he*) *praises*; **laudant**, (*they*) *praise*; **laudatur**, *is praised*; **laudantur**, *are praised*.

**laus** (gen. *laudis*), *praise*.

**legātus** (2), *ambassador*.

**legibus** (dat. plur. of *lex*), *laws*.

**legio** (gen. *legionis*, fem.), *a legion*.

**lēgit**, (*he*) *reads*; **legunt**, (*they*) *read*; **legitur**, *is read*.

**lentus**, *slow*.

**leo** (gen. *leonis*), *a lion*.

**lēviter**, *gently, softly*.

**liber** (gen. *libri*), *a book*.

**liber**, *a, um, free*.

**liberātus**, *set free*.

**libēri**, *children*.

**libēro** (1), *I set free*; **liberāre**, *to set free*.

**lignum**, *wood, log of wood*.

**lingua Latīna**, *the Latin tongue, language*.

**litus** (gen. *litōris*), *shore, coast*.

**lōcus** (2), *a place*.

**longe** (adverb), *by far, far, a great deal*.

**longius** (adverb), *at some distance*.

**longurius**, *a long pole*.

**longus**, *long*.

**loquax** (gen. *loquācis*), *talkative*.

**lorica**, *a cuirass*.

**luce** (abl. sing. of *lux*), *light, dawn*.

**lumen**, *the light*.

**luna**, *the moon*.

M

**mācie** (abl. sing. of *macies*), *with leanness*.

**magīcus** (adjective), *magic*.

**magister** (gen. *magistri*), *a master (of pupils)*.

M

**magnitudo** (gen. *magnitudinis*), *size*.

**magnopēre**, *greatly*.

**magnus**, *great, large, big* (comp. **major**, superl. **maximus**).

**majōres**, *ancestors*.

**mālus**, *bad*; **pejor**, *worse*; **pes-simus**, *worst*.

**mālus**, *a mast*.

**mānare**, *to flow, drop, stream*.

**māne**, *in the morning*.

**mānet**, (*he*) *remains*; **manent**, (*they*) *remain*.

**mānus** (4, fem.), *a hand, a force of soldiers*; **pugnā** in **manibus faciunt**, *they engage in a hand to hand fight*.

**māre** (gen. *maris*), *sea*.

**maritimus** (adjective), *belonging to the sea*.

**mater** (gen. sing. *matris*, gen. plur. *matrum*), *mother*.

**maximus**, *greatest, largest, biggest* (superl. of *magnus*).

**me**, acc. of *ego*.

**meum** (*me and cum*), *with me*.

**mēdius**, *middle*; in agreement with a noun, *in the middle of*.

**mēlior** (neut. *melius*, gen. *melioris*, comp. of *bonus*), *better*.

**melius** (adverb), *better*.

**membrum**, *member, limb*.

**mēmōr** (gen. *memōris*), *mindful*.

**mensis** (gen. *mensis*, masc.), *month*.

**mercātor** (gen. *mercatoris*), *a merchant*.

**metallum**, *a metal*.

**metu** (abl. of *metus*), *with fear*.

**metus** (4), *fear*.

**meus**, *my, mine*.

**mī**, voc. of *meus*.

**miles** (gen. *militis*), *soldier*.

**militia**, *military service*.

## M

**mille** (indeclinable in sing., plur. milia, see p. 55), *a thousand*.  
**minax** (gen. minācis), *threatening*.  
**minimus**, *least, smallest* (superl. of parvus).  
**ministerium**, *ministry, attendance*.  
**minor** (neut. minus, gen. minōris), *less, smaller* (comp. of parvus); **natu minor**, *younger*.  
**miror** (1), *I wonder at*. This is what is called a "deponent" verb. It has active meaning, but passive form.  
**mirus**, *wonderful*.  
**miser**, misēra, misērum, *unhappy, wretched, miserable*.  
**miserandus**, *piteous*.  
**misericordia**, *pity*.  
**mittit**, (he) *sends*; **mittunt**, (they) *send*.  
**mittitur**, *is sent*.  
**mittunt**, (they) *send*.  
**mixtus**, a, um, *mixed*.  
**mōdo** (adverb), *only*.  
**mōdus**, *manner*.  
**molestus**, *troublesome, annoying* (a nuisance).  
**mons** (gen. montis), *a mountain*.  
**monstrum**, *a monster*.  
**mora** (1), *delay*.  
**morbus** (2), *disease, sickness*.  
**mors** (gen. mortis), *death*.  
**mortuus**, a, um, *dead*.  
**mos** (gen. mōris), *manner, custom, habit, character*.  
**motus**, a, um, *moved*.  
**mox**, *soon*.  
**mulget**, (he) *milks*.  
**mulier** (gen. muliēris), *woman*.  
**multitudo** (gen. multitudinis), *a multitude, a large number*.  
**multo** (adv.), *by much, much*.

## M

**multum**, *much*.  
**multus**, *much*.  
**munio**, *I fortify*.  
**muniant**, (they) *fortify*.  
**murmuro** (1), *I murmur*.  
**murus** (2), *a wall*.

## N

**narrant**, (they) *relate*.  
**nātu** (abl. of natus, 4), *by birth*; **natu major**, *older*; **natu minor**, *younger*; **natu maximus**, *oldest*; **natu minimus**, *youngest*.  
**nātus**, *having been born*; **duos annos natus**, *two years old*.  
**nauta** (1), *a sailor*.  
**nāvi** (abl. of navis), *in a ship*.  
**nāvis** (gen. navis), *a ship*; **navis longa**, *a war-ship*.  
**-nē** (used in asking a question, see p. 90).  
**nebūla**, *a cloud*.  
**nec**, *nor*.  
**nēcat**, (he) *slays*.  
**neco** (1), *I slay*.  
**nēgo** (1), *I deny*. Negat se venire posse, *he said that he could not come*.  
**nēmo**, *nobody*.  
**neque**, *nor*; **neque — neque**, *neither—nor*; neque tamen, *nor yet, not however*.  
**nescio**, *I do not know*.  
**niger**, nigra, nigrum, *black*.  
**nihil** (not declined, neut.), *nothing*.  
**nimum**, *too much, too*.  
**nōbilis**, *noble*.  
**nocte** (abl. of nox), *in the night*.  
**nocturnus** (adjective), *belonging to the night, nightly, night*.  
**noluerunt**, (they) *would not, were not willing*.

N

**nōmen** (gen. *nomīnis*), *name*.  
**non**, *not*; **non jam**, *no longer*.  
**nos** (nom. and acc.), *we, us*.  
**noster**, *nostra, nostrum, our*.  
**nōtus**, *known*.  
**novus**, *new, strange*.  
**nox** (gen. *noctis*), *night*.  
**nubes** (gen. *nubis*), *cloud*.  
**nullus** (see p. 70), *no*.  
**numerus** (2), *number*.  
**nunc**, *now*.  
**nunquam**, *never*.  
**nuntio** (1), *I announce*.  
**nuntius**, *a message, messenger*.

O

**ob** (with acc.), *on account of*.  
**obiit**, (*he*) *died*.  
**obsident**, (*they*) *besiege*.  
**obtruncat**, (*he*) *cuts down, strikes down*.  
**occiditur**, (*he*) *is killed*.  
**ocūlus** (2), *eye*.  
**occupabant**, (*they*) *occupied, seized*.  
**octoginta**, *eighty*.  
**omne tempus**, *for all time, for ever*.  
**omnibus** (abl. plur. of *omnis*), *all*.  
**omnis**, *omne, all*.  
**ōnus** (gen. *onēris*), *burden*.  
**opem** (acc.), *aid*.  
**opēre** (abl. of *opus*), *on the work*.  
**opportūnus**, *favourable*.  
**oppressus**, *a, um, oppressed, weighed down*.  
**opprimit** (from *opprimo*; perf. *oppressi*), *overcomes, swamps*.  
**optime** (adv.), *very well*.  
**optimus** (superl. of *bonus*), *very good, best*.  
**opus** (gen. *opēris*), *work*.  
**ora**, *shore*.  
**oratio** (gen. *oratiōnis*), *speech, oration*.

O

**orātor** (gen. *oratōris*), *orator*.  
**orbes faciunt**, (*they*) *form circles* (= our squares).  
**ordo** (gen. *ordinis*, masc.), *rank*.  
**orē** (see *ōs*).  
**ornat**, *he adorns, decorates, equips, fits out*; **ornant**, (*they*) *adorn, etc*.  
**ornātus** (gen. *ornatūs*), *adornment, grand dress*.  
**oro** (1), *I pray*.  
**ōs** (gen. *oris*), *mouth, face*.  
**ōs** (gen. *ossis*), *a bone*.  
**ostium**, *entrance, door*.  
**ōvis** (gen. *ovis*), *a sheep*.

P

**pacem** (acc. sing. of *pax*), *peace*.  
**paene**, *almost*.  
**pallidus**, *pale*.  
**pālus** (gen. *pali*), *stake*.  
**pālus** (gen. *palūdis*), *marsh*.  
**pānis** (gen. *panis*), *bread*.  
**par** (gen. *paris*), *equal*.  
**parens** (gen. *parentis*), *a parent*.  
**parēre** (inf. of *pareo*, with dat.), *to obey*.  
**paro** (1), *I prepare*.  
**pars** (gen. *partis*), *a part, some*.  
**partibus**; **multis partibus**, *a great deal*.  
**partim**, *partly*.  
**parvus**, *small, little*.  
**pasco**, *I feed*; **pascit**, (*he*) *feeds*.  
**passus** (4), *a pace* (see p. 55).  
**pater** (gen. sing. *patris*, gen. plur. *patrum*), *father*.  
**patres**, *the Fathers*.  
**patria**, *native country*.  
**pauci**, *a few*.  
**paullatim**, *by degrees, little by little*.  
**paululum**, *for a bit*.  
**pauper** (gen. *paupēris*), *poor*.



## P

pax (gen. *pācis*), *peace*.  
**pecunia** (1), *money, a sum of money*.  
**pēcus** (gen. *pecōris*), *a herd, flock*.  
**pedester** (*pedestris, pedestre*—adj.), *foot*; *copiae pedestres, foot-forces, infantry*; *iter pedestre, a journey on foot*.  
**pejor** (comp. of *malus*), *worse*.  
**pellibus** (abl. plur. of *pellis*), *with skins*.  
**pendent**, (*they*) *hang*.  
**pendit**, (*he*) *pays*; **pendunt**, (*they*) *pay*.  
**penētro** (1), *I penetrate, make my way*.  
**per** (with acc.), *through, during, over*.  
**perculus**, a, um, *stricken*.  
**percūtit**, (*he*) *strikes*.  
**perpētūus**, *perpetual*.  
**pes** (gen. *pēdis*), *foot*; in *pedes se dederunt, took to their heels, ran away*.  
**pessimus** (superl. of *malus*), *worst, very bad*.  
**pestifer**, a, um, *pestilential, poisonous*.  
**pētīt**, (*he*) *asks for, seeks*; **petunt**, (*they*) *ask for, seek*.  
**petunt**, (*they*) *seek*; *make for, attack*.  
**philosōphus**, a *philosopher*.  
**piger**, *pigra, pigrum, lazy*.  
**piscis**, a *fish*.  
**plebs** (gen. *plebis*), *the commons*.  
**plenus**, *full*.  
**plērīque**, *the greater number, most*.  
**plurīmū**, *very much*; *plurimi, very many*.  
**pōcŭlum**, a *cup*.  
**poēma** (gen. *poemātis*), *a poem*.  
**poena**, *penalty, punishment*.  
**poēta** (1), *a poet*.  
**polluitur**, *is polluted*.

## P

**pomum**, *fruit*.  
**ponit**, (*he*) *places*.  
**pōno**, *I place*; **pōsui** (perf.), *I placed, I have placed*.  
**ponunt**, (*they*) *place*.  
**porrigit**, *he stretches forth*.  
**Porsina**, king of the Etruscans.  
**porta**, *gate, door*.  
**portat**, (*he*) *carries*; **portant**, (*they*) *carry*.  
**portus** (4), *a harbour*.  
**posse** (inf. of *possum*), *to be able* (see *nego*).  
**possident**, (*they*) *possess*.  
**post** (adverb), *afterwards*; prep. *behind, after*; **post Christum natum**, *after the birth of Christ* (our A.D. in dates).  
**postērus**, *next, following*.  
**postquam**, *after that*.  
**postrēmo** (adverb), *last of all*.  
**postrēmū**, *last*.  
**postŭlat**, (*he*) *demands*.  
**potens** (gen. *potentis*), *powerful*.  
**pōtest**, (*he*) *is able, can*; **possunt**, (*they*) *are able, can*.  
**potestas** (gen. *potestātis*), *power*.  
**praeceps** (gen. *praecipītis*), *headlong, precipitous*.  
**praecīdit**, (*he*) *cuts off*.  
**praeclarissime**, *very splendidly*.  
**praeclarissimū**, *very celebrated*.  
**praedo** (gen. *praedōnis*), *a pirate*.  
**praemium**, *a reward*.  
**praestant**, (*they*) *excel, have the advantage*.  
**praeter** (with acc.), *besides, except*.  
**pratū**, *a meadow*.  
**prēcibus**, *with prayers*.  
**pretium**, *a price*.  
**prīmo** (adverb), *at first*.  
**prīmū** (adverb), *first*.  
**princeps** (gen. *principis*), *chief, leader*.



P

prius (adverb), *first*.  
**pro** (with abl.), *before, on behalf of, instead of*.  
 probō (1), *I approve*.  
 procēdit, (he) *advances*.  
 prodigium, *a prodigy, wonder*.  
 proditor, *traitor*.  
 proelium, *battle*.  
 prohibet, (he) *keeps off*.  
 projiciunt, *they throw forth*.  
 pronus, *headlong*.  
 prope (with acc.), *near*.  
 prōpĕro (1), *I hasten*.  
 propius (adverb), *nearer*.  
**prora** (1), *a prow*.  
 provōco (1), *I challenge*.  
 proximus, *the next, the following*;  
     *e proximo, from quite near*.  
 prudentia, *skill*.  
 puella (1), *a girl*.  
**puer** (gen. puĕri), *a boy*.  
 pugna, *battle*.  
 pugnatur, *it is fought*.  
**pugno** (1), *I fight*.  
**pulcher**, pulchra, pulchrum,  
     *beautiful*.  
 Punĭcus, a, um, *Punic; Carthaginian*.  
**punio**, *I punish*.

Q

quadragesĭmus, *fortieth*.  
 quadringentesĭmus, *four-hundredth*.  
 quae (nom. plur. fem. of qui),  
     *which*.  
 quaerit, *he asks for, inquires for*;  
 quaerunt, (they) *ask for, seek*.  
**quam**, *than*; with a note of exclamation, *how!*  
 quamquam, *although*.  
**quando**, *when?*  
 quatit, (he) *shakes*.

Q

-que, *and*. The *que* is attached to the second of the two words; "brothers and sisters" is fratres sororesque (or fratres et sorores).  
**quercus** (4, fem.), *an oak*.  
**qui**, *who* (see p. 73).  
 qui (nom. plur. of qui), *those who*.  
 quia, *because*.  
**quid**, *what?*  
 quidam, quaedam, quoddam, *a certain*; quidam (nom. plur. masc.), *certain*.  
 quĭdem, *indeed*.  
 quies (gen. quĭētis), *rest, quiet*.  
 quĭētus, *quiet, inactive*.  
 quingenti, ac, a, *five hundred*.  
 quinquagesĭmus, *fiftieth*.  
 quinquaginta, *fifty*.  
 quinque, *five*.  
 quisque, *each*.  
 quod (neut. sing. nom. of qui),  
     *which*.  
 quod (adverb), *because*.  
 quomodo, *how?*  
 quondam, *once*.  
 quot, *how many?*  
 quoties, *how often?* in XIII., *as often as*.

R

rādunt, (they) *shave*.  
 rāmus, *a branch*.  
 rarus, *rare, extraordinary*.  
 recēdit, (he) *retires*; recedunt,  
     (they) *retire, draw back*.  
 recte, *rightly*.  
 reddo, *I give back, return*; redde,  
     *give back!*  
 redeunt, (they) *come back, return*.  
 redĭgit, (he) *reduces, subdues*; redigunt, (they) *reduce*.  
**redit**, (he) *returns*; redeunt,  
     (they) *return*.  
 redūcit, (he) *leads back*.

## R

**regīna** (1), *a queen*.  
**regio** (gen. *regiōnis*), *district, region*.  
**regius**, *royal*.  
**regno** (1), *I reign*.  
**rego** (3), *I rule, steer*.  
**regūlus**, *a prince*.  
**relīgo** (1), *I tie*.  
**relinquo** (3), *I leave; reliqui, I have left, I left*.  
**reliqui**, *the rest, the remainder*.  
**remōvet**, (he) *removes, withdraws*.  
**renovatur**, *is renewed*.  
**res** (5), *thing, fact, matter, affair*.  
**respondet**, (he) *answers*.  
**restat**, (he) *remains*.  
**retrāhit**, (he) *draws back; retraction, (they) draw back, drag back*.  
**revertit**, (he) *returns; revertunt, (they) return*.  
**revertō** (3, perf. *reverti*), *I return, come back*.  
**rex** (gen. *rēgis*), *a king*.  
**ridens**, *smiling, laughing*.  
**rideo**, *I laugh*.  
**robustus**, *strong*.  
**rogare**, *to ask*.  
**Romānus**, *Roman; Romani, the Romans*.  
**rōsa** (1), *a rose*.  
**rota**, *wheel*.  
**ruīna**, *downfall*.

## S

**saepe**, *often; saepius, more often; saepissime, very often*.  
**saevus**, *cruel, fierce*.  
**saginabat**, (he) *used to feast, gorge*.  
**sagitta**, *an arrow*.  
**sagittarius**, *using bow and arrows; sagittarii, archers*.

## S

**salus** (gen. *salūtis*), *safety*.  
**sanguis** (gen. *sanguīnis*), *blood*.  
**sapiens** (gen. *sapientis*), *wise, a wise man*.  
**sapientia**, *wisdom*.  
**saxum**, *rock*.  
**scio**, *I know*.  
**scriba**, *a secretary*.  
**se ipse interficit**, (he) *kills himself*.  
**secēdo** (3), *I secede, withdraw*.  
**secum**, *with him (cum, with, is tacked on to se)*.  
**secundus**, *second; res secundae, prosperity*.  
**secutūrus**, *in order to follow, with the intention of following*.  
**sed**, *but*.  
**sēdeo**, *I sit*.  
**sēges** (gen. *segētis*), *a crop*.  
**Semēlē** (gen. *Semelēs*), *Semele*.  
**semper**, *always*.  
**sēnex** (gen. sing. *senis*, gen. plur. *senum*), *an old man*.  
**sentio** (perf. *sensi*), *I feel*.  
**septendēcim**, *seventeen*.  
**sequitur**, (he) *follows*.  
**sermo** (gen. *sermōnis*), *conversation, talk; in X., language*.  
**serpens** (gen. *serpentis*), *a serpent*.  
**sērunt**, (they) *sow*.  
**servat**, *keeps*.  
**servus** (2), *a slave*.  
**sescenti**, *six hundred*.  
**si**, *if*.  
**si cui**, *if to any one; si quid, if . . . anything*.  
**sic**, *so*.  
**siccus**, *dry*.  
**Sicilia**, *Sicily*.  
**signum**, *a sign, mark*.  
**silentium**, *silence*.  
**silva** (1), *a wood, forest*.  
**similia** (plur. neut. of *similis*), *like*.

S

**similis**, e, *like* (superl. *simillimus*).  
**simul** atque, *as soon as*.  
**sin**, *but if*.  
**sine** (with abl.), *without*.  
**singulāris**, *extraordinary, single*.  
**sinister**, sinistra, sinistrum, *left*.  
**sitit**, *thirsts, is thirsty*.  
**socius** (2), *a companion*.  
**solum**, *earth*.  
**solum** (adverb), *only*.  
**solus** (adjective), *alone* (p. 70).  
**solvere** (3), *I cut loose, put off* (a ship).  
**somnus**, *sleep*.  
**soror** (gen. sorōris), *sister*.  
**spatiōsus**, *spacious, roomy*.  
**spectāculum**, *sight, spectacle*.  
**spectat**, (it) *looks*.  
**speculātōres**, *the scouts*.  
**specus** (gen. specūs), *a cave*.  
**spes** (5), *a hope*.  
**splendidus**, *splendid*.  
**spuma**, *foam*.  
**squalidus**, *dirty*.  
**stantem** (acc. of stans), *standing*.  
**stat**, (he) *stands*.  
**statim**, *at once*.  
**sternit**, (he) *lays*; sternunt, (they) *lay*.  
**stipendium**, *pay*.  
**strepitus** (gen. strepitūs), *clanking*.  
**sub** (with abl.), *under*; sub vesperum, *about evening-time*.  
**subito**, *suddenly*.  
**sublātus** est, *was removed*.  
**submittuntur**, (they) *are sent up*.  
**subrideo** (perf. subrisi), *I smile*.  
**sudor** (gen. sudōris), *sweat*.  
**sui**, *his own men*.  
**sumēre**, *to take*.  
**summōvent**, (they) *remove*.

S

**summus**, *highest, extreme, great*; **summus collis**, *the top of the hill*; **summa vi**, *with all their might*; **summis Volsorum copiis**, *with all the forces of the Volsci*.  
**suo quisque tempore**, *each at his own time* (at the time that he finds convenient).  
**super** (with abl.), *above*.  
**supērat**, (he) *defeats*; **superant**, (they) *defeat*; in X., *is greater than*.  
**superātus**, a, um, *overcome*.  
**superbia**, *pride*.  
**superbus**, *proud*.  
**superius** (neut. of superior), *upper*.  
**supersunt**, (they) *remain over, are left*.  
**supra** (with acc.), *over, above*.  
**surdus**, *deaf*.  
**surgit**, (he) *rises*.  
**sustinent**, *withstand, stand up against*.  
**suus**, *his (own), their (own)*.

T

**tabes** (3), *wasting, consumption, decay*.  
**taceo**, *I am silent, I hold my tongue*.  
**talis**, e (gen. talis), *such, the following*.  
**tamen**, *however*.  
**tamque**, *and so*.  
**tandem**, *at length*.  
**tantus**, *so great, such*.  
**taurus**, *a bull*.  
**te** (acc. of tu), *you* (of one person).  
**telum**, *a dart*.  
**tempestas** (gen. tempestātis), *a storm*.

## T

templum, *temple*.  
**tempus** (gen. tempōris), *time*.  
 tēnet, (*he*) *holds*; tenent, (*they*) *hold*.  
 tergum, *back, rear*.  
 terra (1), *land*.  
**terret**, (*he*) *frightens*; **terrent**, (*they*) *frighten*; **terretur**, *is frightened*; **terrentur**, *are frightened*.  
 terribiles (from terribilis), *terrible*.  
 timens, *fearing*.  
**tīmet**, (*he*) *fears*; **timent**, (*they*) *fear*.  
 timor (gen. timōris), *fear*.  
 tollitque, *and (he) lifts, takes up*.  
 tollo (3), *I take away*.  
 torrens (gen. torrentis), *torrent, brook*.  
 torrens (gen. torrentis, adj.), *burning, as it burned*.  
 totius (gen. sing. of totus).  
**totus**, **a**, **um**, *the whole* (see p. 70).  
 tractat, (*he*) *treats*.  
 trans (with acc.), *across*.  
**transit**, (*he*) *crosses*; **transeunt**, (*they*) *cross*.  
 trecenti, *ae, a, three hundred*.  
 tredēcim, *thirteen*.  
 trepidus, *excited*.  
**tres** (see p. 54), *three*.  
 tribūnal, *tribunal, throne*.  
 tricesimus, *thirtieth*.  
 triginta, *thirty*.  
**tristis**, *e, sad*.  
 Troja, *Troy*.  
 trudit, *pushes*.  
**tu** (p. 63), *you* (of one person).  
 tulit, (*he*) *took*.  
 tum, *then*.  
 tunc, *then*.  
 turba, *a crowd*.  
**tuus**, *your* (of one person).

## U

**ubi**, *where?*  
 undeviginti, *nineteen*.  
 undīque (adverb), *from all sides*.  
**unus**, *one* (see p. 70).  
 urbe (abl. of urbs).  
**urbs** (gen. urbis), *city*.  
 ursus, *a bear*.  
 usu, *from the use*.  
 usus (gen. usūs, abl. usu), *use, experience*.  
 ut, *as*.  
**uter** (see p. 71), *which? (of two)*.  
**utilis**, *e, useful*.  
 uxor (gen. uxōris), *wife*.

## V

**vāleo** (2), *I am well*; valē, *farewell, good-bye* (to one person); valēte, *farewell, good-bye* (to more than one person).  
 validus, *strong*.  
 vallis (gen. vallis), *valley*.  
 vallum, *a rampart*.  
**vastat**, (*he*) *lays waste*; vastant, (*they*) *lay waste*.  
 vastus, *vast*.  
**vectigal** (gen. vectigālis), *a tax*.  
 vel, *or*.  
 velut, *like, as if*.  
 vēnio, *I come*; vēni, *I have come, I came*.  
**vēnit**, (*he*) *comes*; **veniunt**, (*they*) *come*.  
 venter (gen. ventris), *the stomach, belly*.  
 ventus, *the wind*.  
**verbum**, *a word*.  
 vero (adverb), *however*.  
 vertunt, (*they*) *turn*.  
 verus, *true*.

V

**vespère** (abl. of vesper), *in the evening*.  
**vester**, tra, trum, *your* (of more than one person).  
**vestis** (gen. vestis), *clothing*; vestes, *clothes*.  
**vestiuntur**, *they are clothed, clothe themselves*.  
**vi** (abl. of vis), *force, might*.  
**via**, *way, path, road, course*.  
**viātor** (gen. viatōris), *a traveller*.  
**vibro** (1), *I brandish*.  
**vicinus**, *neighbouring*.  
**victimā**, *a victim*.  
**victōria**, *victory*.  
**victus**, a, um, *conquered*.  
**videns**, *seeing*.  
**video**, *I see*.  
**videt**, (he) *sees*; **vident**, (they) *see*.  
**vidētur**, *seems*; **videntur**, *are seen, seem*.  
**vigeo**, *I flourish*.  
**viginti** (indeclinable), *twenty*.  
**villa**, *a country-house* (domus, a town-house).  
**vincio**, *I bind*.  
**vincit**, *he conquers*.  
**vinco** (perf. vici), *I conquer*.  
**vinculum**, *a chain*.  
**vindico** (1), *I punish*.

V

**vir** (gen. viri), *a man*; the word is only used in praise, e.g. bonus vir; "all men" is omnes homines.  
**virtus** (gen. virtūtis), *bravery, courage, virtue*.  
**vis** (abl. vi), *with force, strength*.  
**vita** (1), *life*.  
**vitis** (gen. vitis), *a vine*.  
**vitrum**, *wood*.  
**vivo** (3), *I live*.  
**vivunt**, (they) *live*.  
**vix**, *scarcely*.  
**voco** (1), *I call*.  
**Volsci**, *the Volscians*.  
**volucris**, *a bird*.  
**volūmen** (gen. voluminis), *coil*.  
**voluptas** (gen. voluptātis), *pleasure*.  
**volvitur**, *is whirled*.  
**vos**, *you* (plural of tu).  
**vox** (gen. vōcis), *voice*.  
**vulgo** (adv.), *generally, commonly, mostly*.  
**vulnerātus**, a, um, *wounded*.  
**vulneribus** (abl. plur. of vulnus), with lapidum, *by the wounds inflicted by the stones*.  
**vulnus** (gen. vulnēris), *wound*.  
**vult**, (he) *wishes*.  
**vultus** (4), *look, expression*.



## ENGLISH-LATIN DICTIONARY.

*Obs. A figure after a word denotes the declension or conjugation to which it belongs.*

### A

**able**, is able, *pōtest* ; are able, *possunt*.  
**absent**, is absent, *abest* ; are absent, *absunt*.  
**active**, *impiger*, *impigra*, *impigrum*.  
**adorn**, (he) adorns, *ornat* ; (they) adorn, *ornant*.  
**adversity**, *res adversae* (*i.e.* adverse things).  
**affair**, *res* (5).  
**again**, *it̄erum* ; again and again, *iterum atque iterum*.  
**Alexander**, *Alexander* (gen. *Alexandri*).  
**all**, *omnis*, *omne*.  
**alone**, *sōlus* (gen. *solūs*, p. 70).  
**already**, *jam*.  
**also**, *et̄iam* ; not only . . . but also, *non solum* . . . *sed et̄iam*.  
**always**, *semper*.  
**ambassador**, *legātus* (2).  
**ancestors**, *majōres*.  
**ancient**, *antīquus*.

### A

**and**, *et*, *-que*. (“ Brothers and sisters,” for instance, may be either *fratres et sorores*, or *fratres sororesque*.)  
**animal**, *animal* (p. 24).  
**announce** (to), *nuntiare*.  
**another**, *alius* (see p. 70).  
**approach**, *adventus* (4).  
**are** (they), *sunt*.  
**arms**, *arma*.  
**army**, *exercitus* (4).  
**arrival**, *adventus* (4).  
**ask for**, (he) asks for, *p̄tit* ; (they) ask for, *petunt*.  
**asleep** (to be), *dormire*.  
**assemble**, *convenio*.  
**assist** (to), *adesse* (with dative).  
**at once**, *statim*.  
**attack**, *impetus* (4).  
**await** (to), *expectare*.  
**away** (to be), *abesse*.

### B

**bad**, *mālus*.  
**beautiful**, *pulcher*, *pulchra*, *pulchrum*.

B

**before**, *pro* (preposition with the ablative).  
**best**, *optĭmus*.  
**better** (adj.), *mēllor*; (adv.) *melius*.  
**bid**, (he) bids, *jubet*; (they) bid, *jubent*.  
**big**, *magnus*.  
**bird**, *avis*.  
**black**, *niger, nigra, nigrum*.  
**blame**, (he) blames, *culpat*; (they) blame, *culpant*.  
**body**, *corpus* (gen. *corpōris*).  
**bold**, *audax* (see p. 37).  
**book**, *liber* (gen. *libri*).  
**both**, *et*.  
**boy**, *puer* (2).  
**brave**, *fortis* (see p. 35).  
**bravely**, *fortiter*; more bravely, *fortius*; most bravely, *fortissime*.  
**broad**, *lātus*.  
**brother**, *frater* (gen. sing. *fratris*, gen. plur. *fratrum*).  
**build**, (he) builds, *aedificat*; (they) build, *aedificant*.  
**burden**, *onus* (gen. *onēris*).  
**bust**, *imago* (gen. *imaginis*).  
**but**, *sed*.  
**by**; *by* a person, *a* or *ab* (*ab* always before a vowel), with the ablative; *by* a thing, the ablative without *a* or *ab*.

C

**camp**, *castra* (2), plural.  
**can**, (he) can, *pōtest*; they can, *possunt*; he cannot, *non potest*.  
**capital**, *cāput* (gen. *capĭtis*).  
**carry** (to), *portare*.  
**cavalry**, *equĭtes* (plural of *eques*, a horseman).  
**celebrated**, *clarus*.  
**certain**, *certus*.  
**character**, *mōres* (plural of *mos*).  
**charge**, *impētus* (4).  
**charm**, (he) charms, *delectat*; (they) charm, *delectant*.  
**Cicero**, *Cicēro* (gen. *Cicerōnis*).  
**citizen**, *cĭvis* (gen. *cĭvis*).  
**city**, *urbs* (gen. *urbis*).  
**clear**, *clarus*.  
**cloud**, *nūbes* (gen. *nubis*).  
**coast**, *litus* (gen. *litoris*).  
**cold**, *frĭgus* (gen. *frigōris*).  
**colour**, *color* (gen. *colōris*).  
**come**, (he) comes, *vēnit*; (they) come, *veniunt*.  
**come back**, (he) comes back, *redit*; (they) come back, *redeunt*.  
**come together** (to), *convenire*.  
**consider**, *is* considered, *habetur*; *are* considered, *habentur*.  
**content**, *contentus*.  
**conversation**, *sermo* (gen. *sermōnis*).

## C

**country**, *rus* (gen. *ruris*).  
**courage**, *virtus* (gen. *virtutis*,  
 fem.)  
**cross**, (he) crosses, *transit* ;  
 (they) cross, *transeunt*.

## D

**daring**, *audax* (see p. 37).  
**dart**, *telum*.  
**day**, *dies* (masc., see p. 45) ;  
 every day, *cotidie* ; to-day,  
*hodie*.  
**deaf**, *surdus*.  
**dear**, *carus*.  
**death**, *mors* (gen. *mortis*).  
**December**, *December*, *-bris*,  
*-bre* ; in the month of  
 December, *mense Decembri*.  
**decorate**, (he) decorates,  
*ornat* ; (they) decorate,  
*ornant*.  
**defeat**, (he) defeats, *superat* ;  
 (they) defeat, *superant* ; are  
 defeated, *superantur*.  
**delight**, (it) delights, *delectat* ;  
 (they) delight, *delectant*.  
**desire** (I), *cupio*.  
**despise** (I), *contemno* (3).  
**difficult**, *difficilis*, *difficile* (for  
 the comparison, see p. 51).  
**diligence**, *diligentia*.  
**distant** (is), *abest* ; are dis-  
 tant, *absunt*.  
**do**, *ago*, *facio*.  
**draw up** (I), *instruo* (3).  
**drive**, (he) drives, *agit* ; (they)  
 drive, *agunt*.

## E

**ear**, *auris* (gen. *auris*).  
**easy**, *facilis*, *facile* (for the  
 comparison, see p. 51).  
**eighteen**, *undeviginti*.  
**elder**, *natu major* (i.e. greater  
 by birth).  
**enemy**, *hostis* (gen. *hostis*) ;  
 the enemy, *hostes* (plural).  
**enormous**, *ingens* (gen. *in-*  
*gentis*, abl. *ingenti*).  
**evening** (in the), *vespere*.  
**every**, *omnis*.  
**everybody**, *omnes* (plural of  
*omnis*).  
**every day**, *cotidie*.  
**expect** (to), *expectare*.

## F

**faithful**, *fidus*.  
**famous**, *clarus*.  
**far**, by far, *longe* ; is far off,  
*longe abest* ; are far off,  
*longe absunt*.  
**farewell**, to one person, *valē* ;  
 to more than one, *valēte*.  
**farther**, *longius* ; farthest, (or)  
 very far, *longissime*.  
**fast**, *celer*, *celeris*, *celere*.  
**father**, *pater* (gen. sing. *patris*,  
 gen. plur. *patrum*).  
**fault**, to find fault with, *cul-*  
*pare*.  
**fear**, (he) fears, *timet* ; (they)  
 fear, *timent*.  
**few**, *pauci*.

## F

**fifty**, *quingquaginta*.  
**fight** (I), *pugno* (1).  
**fleet**, *classis* (gen. *classis*).  
**flight** (I put to), *fugo* (1).  
**flower**, *flos* (gen. *flōris*).  
**foot**, *pes* (gen. *pēdis*) ; "foot"  
 is an adjective in foot-forces,  
*copiae pedestres* (*pedester*,  
*pedestris*, *pedestre*).  
**forces**, *cōpiae*.  
**fortify** (I), *munio*.  
**frequent**, *creber*, *crebra*, *cre-*  
*brum*.  
**friend**, *amīcus*.  
**frighten**, (he) frightens, *terret* ;  
 (they) frighten, *terrent* ; is  
 frightened, *terretur* ; are  
 frightened, *terrentur*.  
**from**, *a* or *ab* (with abl.)  
**full**, *plēnus*.  
**furnish** (to), *ornare*.

## G

**garden**, *hortus* (2).  
**German**, *Germānus*.  
**girl**, *puella* (1).  
**give**, (he) gives, *dat* ; (they)  
 give, *dant* ; it is given,  
*datur*.  
**go out**, (he) goes out, *exit* ;  
 (they) go out, *exeunt*.  
**good**, *bonus*.  
**good-bye** (to one person),  
*vale* ; to more than one,  
*valēte*.  
**great**, *magnus*.

## H

**hand**, *mānus* (4, fem.)  
**harbour**, *portus* (4).  
**has**, *habet* ; (they) have,  
*habent*.  
**head**, *cāput* (gen. *capītis*).  
**hear** (to), *audire*.  
**heart**, *anīmus* (2).  
**heavy**, *grāvis*, *grave*.  
**help** (noun), *auxilium*.  
**help** (I), *adsum* (*ad-sum*) with  
 dative.  
**her** (see his).  
**high**, *altus* ; highest praise,  
*summa laus*.  
**his** is generally left out :  
*suus* can be used when  
 the *his* means *his own*  
 (i.e. when the *his* refers  
 to the subject of the sen-  
 tence).  
**hold the tongue**, *tāceo*.  
**home**, (to) home, *dōmum* ;  
 at home, *dōmi* ; from home,  
*dōmo*.  
**hope**, *spes* (5).  
**horn**, *cornu*.  
**horse**, *equus* (2).  
**horseman**, *eques* (gen. *equītis*).  
**hour**, *hora* (1).  
**house**, *domus* (4, fem., see  
 p. 44).  
**how** ! *quam*.  
**how many**, *quot* (how many  
 men, *quot homines*).  
**how often** ? *quoties*.  
**huge**, *ingens* (gen. *ingentis*).

## I

**I**, *ego* (p. 63).  
**ignorant**, I am ignorant of,  
*nescio*.

**image**, *imāgo* (gen. *imaginis*,  
 fem.)

**immediately**, *statim*.

**in**, *in*, with the abl., but "in  
 summer," "in winter," etc.,  
 are put in the ablative  
 without *in*; "in Rome" is  
*Romae* (see p. 61, note).

**incite** (to), *incitare*.

**industry**, *diligentia*.

**inform**, he informs Caesar,  
*Caesārem certiozem facit*;  
 they inform Caesar, *Caesarem*  
*certiozem faciunt* (i.e. they  
 make Caesar more cer-  
 tain).

**inhabit** (I), *inçolo* (3).

**into**, *in* (with acc.)

**is**, *est*; is—from, *abest*.

**Italy**, *Italia* (1).

## J

**January**, *Januarius*.

**June**, *Junius*.

## K

**keen**, *acer*, *acris*, *acre* (p. 38).

**kill**, (he) kills, *interficit*;  
 (they) kill, *interficiunt*.

**kind**, *gēnus* (gen. *genēris*).

**king**, *rex* (gen. *rēgis*).

## K

**know** (I), *scio*; I do not  
 know, *nescio*.

**known**, *nōtus*.

## L

**lame**, *claudus*.

**land**, *āger* (gen. *agri*).

**large**, *magnus*.

**lay waste**, (he) lays waste,  
*vastat*; (they) lay waste,  
*vastant*.

**lazy**, *piger*, *pigra*, *pigrum*.

**lead**, (he) leads, *dūcit*; (they)  
 lead, *ducunt*; lead out,  
*educit*, *educunt*; lead back,  
*reducit*, *reducunt*.

**leader**, *dux* (gen. *dūcis*).

**left**, *sinister*, *sinistra*, *sinistrum*.

**legion**, *legio* (gen. *legiōnis*, fem.)

**letter**, *epistūla* (1).

**life**, *vita* (1).

**lightning**, *fulgur* (gen. *ful-*  
*gūris*); flashes of lightning  
*fulgura*.

**like**, *similis*, *simile* (superl.  
*simillimus*).

**likeness**, *imāgo* (gen. *imagi-*  
*nis*, fem.)

**little**, *parvus*.

**live** (I), *vivo* (3).

**long** (adjective), *longus*; (ad-  
 verb), for a long time, *diu*;  
 for longer, *diutius*; for very  
 long, *diutissime*.

**lord**, *domīnus* (2).



## L

loud, *magnus*.

love, (he) loves, *amat* ; (they) love, *amant* ; is loved, *amatur* ; are loved, *amantur*.

## M

make, *facio*.

man, *homo* (gen. *hōmīnis*) ;  
a (good) man, *vir* (gen. *vīri*).

manner, *mos* (gen. *mōris*).

many, *multi*.

master, of pupils, *magister*  
(gen. *magistrī*) ; of slaves,  
*dominus* (2).

matter, *res* (5).

me, *me* (p. 63).

merchant, *mercator* (gen.  
*mercatoris*).

message, *nuntius* (2).

messenger, *nuntius* (2).

middle, *medius* ; in the  
middle of summer, *media*  
*aestate* (i.e. in middle sum-  
mer).

mile, *mille passus* (see p. 55).

milk, *lac* (gen. *lactis*).

mind, *animus* (2).

mindful, *mēmor* (gen. *me-  
mōris*).

mine, *meus*.

money, *pecūnia* (1).

month, *mensis* (gen. *mensis*,  
masc.)

morning (in the), *mane*.

mother, *māter* (gen. sing.  
*matris*, gen. plur. *matrum*).

## M

mound, *agger* (gen. *aggēris*).

much (by), *multo*.

much, *multus*.

multitude, *multitudo* (gen.  
*multitudinis*, fem.)

my, *meus* (vocative, *mi*).

## N

name, *nōmen* (gen. *nomīnis*).

neither — nor, *neque* —  
*neque*.

never, *nunquam*.

night, *nox* (gen. sing. *noctis*,  
gen. plur. *noctium*).

nineteen, *undeviginti*.

no, *nullus*.

nobody, *nēmo*.

not, *non*.

nothing, *nihil* (neut. inde-  
clinable).

now, *nunc*.

number, *numērus* (2).

## O

oak, *quercus* (4, fem.)

of, informs some one of, *de*.

off, is—off, *abest*.

often, *saepe*.

old, of things, *antīquus* ; of  
people, two (etc.) years old,  
*duos(etc.) annos natus* ; older,  
*natu major* ; oldest, *natu*  
*maximus*.

old man, *sēnex* (gen. sing.  
*sēnis*, gen. plur. *senum*).

## O

on to, *in* (with acc.)  
 once, at once, *statim*.  
 one, *unus* (gen. *unius*, p. 70).  
 only, *solus* (see p. 70); adv.  
*solum*.  
 oration, *oratio* (gen. *orati-*  
*ōnis*, fem.)  
 orator, *orātor* (gen. *oratoris*).  
 order, (he) orders, *jubet*;  
 (they) order, *jubent*.  
 other, *alius* (see p. 70).  
 ought (I), *debeo*.  
 our, *noster*, *nostra*, *nostrum*.  
 out of doors, *foris*.  
 overcome, (he) overcomes,  
*superat*; (they) overcome,  
*superant*.  
 owe (I), *debeo*.

## P

part, *pars* (gen. *partis*).  
 pay, (he) pays, *pendit*; (they)  
 pay, *pendunt*.  
 pleasant, *gratus*, *dulcis*.  
 please, (it) pleases, *delectat*;  
 (they) please, *delectant*.  
 poem, *poëma* (gen. *poemātis*).  
 poet, *poeta* (1).  
 poor, *pauper* (gen. *paupēris*).  
 post (I), *collōco* (1).  
 praise, *laus* (gen. *laudis*).  
 praise, (he) praises, *laudat*;  
 (they) praise, *laudant*.  
 present (I am), *adsum*.  
 pretty, *pulcher*.

## P

prosperity, *res secundae*.  
 prow, *prora* (1).  
 punish (I), *punio* (4).  
 put to flight (I), *fugo* (1).

## Q

queen, *regīna* (1).  
 quick, *celer*, *celēris*, *celere* (p.  
 38).

## R

rampart, *agger* (gen. *aggēris*).  
 read, (he) reads, *lēgit*; (they)  
 read, *legunt*.  
 reign (I), *regno* (1).  
 remain, (he) remains, *mānet*;  
 (they) remain, *manent*.  
 rest (the), *ceteri*.  
 return, (he) returns, *redit*;  
 (they) return, *redeunt*.  
 reward, *praemium*.  
 rich, *dives* (gen. *divītis*).  
 riches, *divitiae*.  
 right, *dexter*, *dextra*, *dextrum*.  
 river, *flumen* (gen. *flumēnis*).  
 Roman, *Romānus*.  
 room, *conclāve* (gen. *conclāvis*).  
 rose, *rōsa* (1).  
 royal, *rēgius*.  
 rush, *impētus* (4).

## S

sad, *tristis*, *triste*.  
 said, is said, *dicitur*; are  
 said, *dicuntur*.

## S

**sailor**, *nauta* (1).  
**same**, *idem* (p. 67).  
**satisfied**, *contentus*.  
**say**, (he) says, *dicit* ; (they) say, *dicunt* ; (he) is said, *dicitur* ; (they) are said, *dicuntur*.  
**scarcely**, *vix*.  
**sea**, *māre* (gen. *māris*).  
**see**, (he) sees, *videt* ; (they) see, *vident*.  
**seek**, (he) seeks, *petit* ; (they) seek, *petunt*.  
**seem**, (he) seems, *videtur* ; (they) seem, *videntur*.  
**seen**, (he) is seen, *vidētur* ; (they) are seen, *videntur*.  
**send**, (he) sends, *mittit* ; (they) send, *mittunt*.  
**seventeen**, *septendēcim*.  
**sharp**, *acūtus*.  
**ship**, *nāvis* (gen. *navis*).  
**shore**, *litus* (gen. *litōris*).  
**short**, *brēvis*, *brève*.  
**shout**, *clāmor* (gen. *clamōris*).  
**shouting**, *clāmor* (gen. *clāmōris*).  
**shrill**, *acūtus*.  
**silent** (I am), *taceo*.  
**sing**, (he) sings, *cānit* ; (they) sing, *cānunt*.  
**sister**, *soror* (gen. *sorōris*).  
**six hundred**, *sescenti*, *ae*, *a*.  
**slave**, *servus* (2).  
**sleep** (I), *dormio*.  
**small**, *parvus*.

## S

**soldier**, *mīles* (gen. *mīlītis*).  
**some—others**, *alii—alii*.  
**some day**, *aliquando* (adv.)  
**sometimes**, *interdum* (adv.)  
**son**, *filius* (2).  
**song**, *carmen* (gen. *carmīnis*).  
**soon**, *mox*.  
**speech**, *oratio* (gen. *oratiōnis*, fem.)  
**spirited**, *acer*, *acris*, *acre* (p. 38).  
**spur**, *calcar* (gen. *calcāris*).  
**station** (to), *collocare*.  
**stay**, (he) stays, *mānet* ; (they) stay, *manent*.  
**steer**, (I), *rēgo* (3).  
**stream**, *flumen* (gen. *flumīnis*).  
**sum of money**, *pecunia* (1).  
**summer**, *aestas* (gen. *aestātis*).  
**surround**, (he) surrounds, *circumdat* ; (they) surround, *circumstant*.  
**sweet**, *dulcis*, *dulce*.

## T

**table**, *mensa* (1).  
**talk**, *sermo* (gen. *sermōnis*).  
**tax**, *vectigal* (gen. *vectigālīs*).  
**teach** (I), *erudio*.  
**territory**, *fines* (plur. of *finis*).  
**that**, *ille*, *illa*, *illud* (p. 65).  
**their**, *suus*.  
**thing**, *res* (5).

## T

**thirteen**, *tredĕcim*.  
**thirty**, *triginta*.  
**this**, *hic, haec, hoc* (p. 65).  
**throw**, (he) throws, *jacit*;  
 (they) throw, *jaciunt*.  
**time**, *tempus* (gen. *tempōris*).  
**tired**, *fessus*.  
**to**, meaning motion to, *ad*  
 with acc., but "to Rome"  
 is *Romam*, and "(to) home"  
 is *domum*.  
**to-day**, *hōdie*.  
**to-morrow**, *cras*.  
**tongue**, to hold the tongue,  
*tacĕre*.  
**top**, the top of the oak,  
*summa quercus*.  
**trouble**, *res adversae*.

## U

**uncertain**, *incertus*.  
**unfortunate**, *miser*.  
**unhappy**, *miser, misĕra, misĕ-*  
*rum*.  
**unlike**, *dissimilis, dissimile*;  
 superl. *dissimillimus*.  
**unmindful**, *immĕmor* (gen.  
*immĕmōris*).  
**urge**, (he) urges on, *incĭtat*;  
 (they) urge on, *incitant*.  
**useful**, *utilis, utile*.

## V

**vain**, in vain, *frustra*.  
**victory**, *victōria* (1).

## V

**virtue**, *virtus* (1, gen. *vir-*  
*tūtis*, fem.)  
**voice**, *vox* (gen. *vōcis*).

## W

**wait for** (I), *exspecto* (1).  
**war**, *bellum*; war-ship, *navis*  
*longa*.  
**warn** (to), *monĕre*.  
**waste**, (he) lays waste, *va-*  
*stat*; (they) lay waste, *va-*  
*stant*.  
**wave**, *fluctus* (4).  
**we**, *nos*.  
**weighty**, *grāvis, grave*.  
**welcome**, *grātus*.  
**well** (I am), *valeo*.  
**what?** *quid?*  
**when?** *quando?*  
**where?** *ubi*.  
**which** (of two)? *uter*.  
**white**, *albus*.  
**whole**, *totus* (see p. 70).  
**wide**, *lātus*.  
**wine**, *vinum*.  
**wing**, *cornu* (of an army).  
**winter**, *hiems* (gen. *hiemis*).  
**wisdom**, *sapientia* (1).  
**wise**, *sāptens* (gen. *sapientis*).  
**wish**, (he) wishes, *cūpit*;  
 (they) wish, *cūpiunt*.  
**witty**, *facĕtus*.  
**woman**, *mulier* (gen. *muli-*  
*ĕris*).  
**wood**, *silva* (1).

W

**word**, *verbum*.

**work**, *opus* (gen. *opëris*).

**worse**, *pëjor*; **worst**, *pessimus*.

**wretched**, *miser*, *misëra*, *miserum*.

Y

**year**, *annus*.

**yesterday**, *heri*.

Y

**you**, *tu* (sing.), *vos* (plur., p. 63).

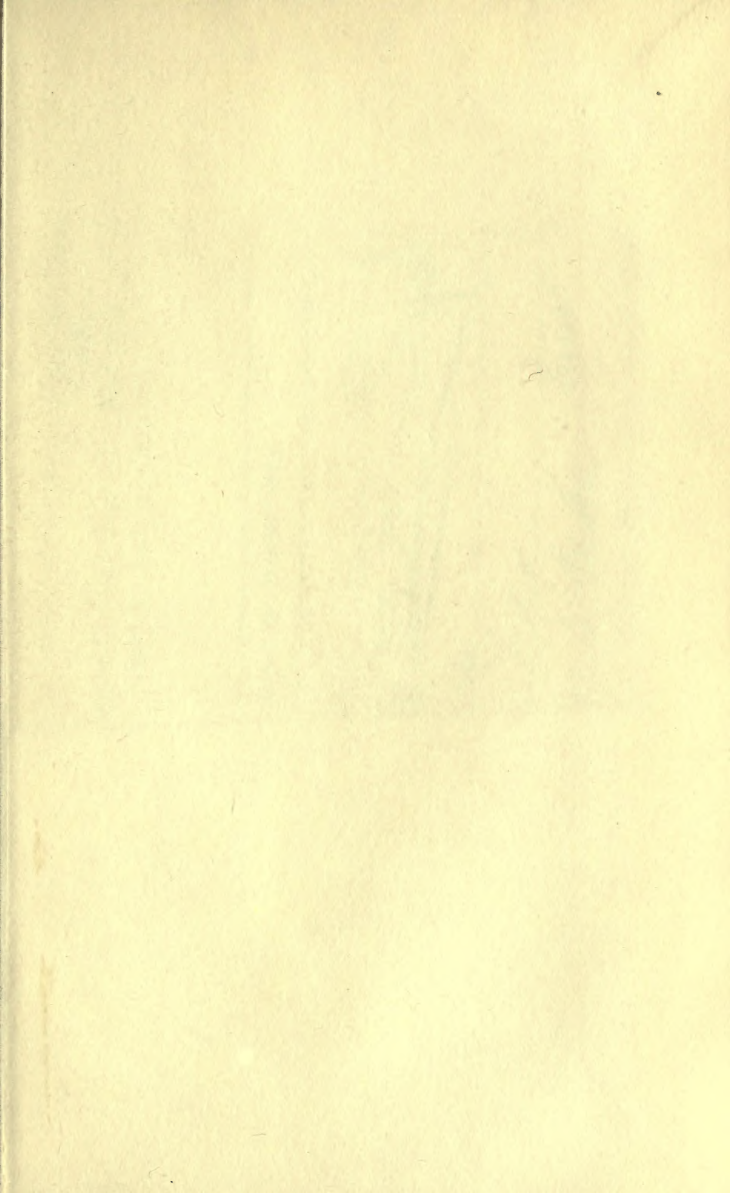
**younger**, *natu minor*; **youngest**, *natu minimus*.

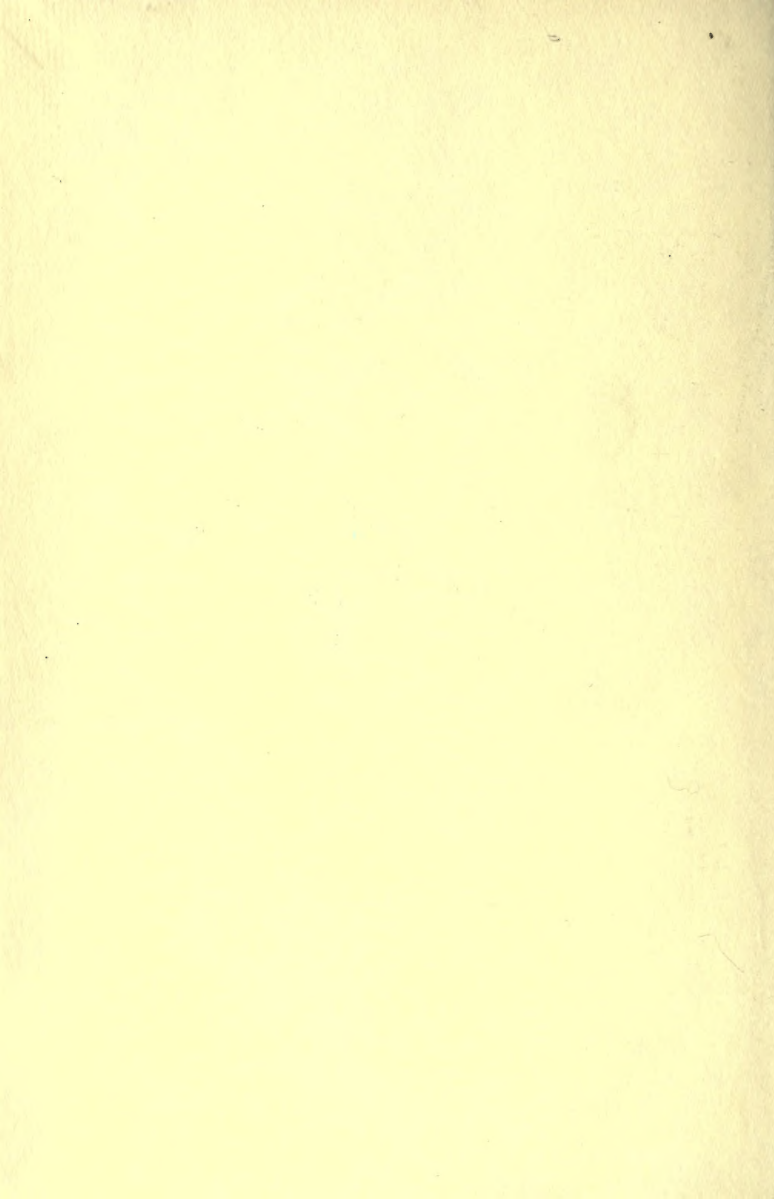
**young man**, *jüvënis* (gen. sing. *juvenis*, gen. plur. *juvenum*).

**your, yours**, of one, *tuus*; of more than one, *vester*, *vestra*, *vestrum*.









35405  
Marshall (and Pantin, W.E.P.)  
is shorter Latin course.

NAME OF BORROWER

~~Mr. S. D. J. J.~~

~~Mr. S. D. J. J.~~  
Mr. S. D. J. J.

